

# **INTERSLAVIC**

## **zonal constructed language**

### **an introduction for English-speakers**

*Interslavic zonal constructed language is an auxiliary language, which looks very similar to real spoken Slavic languages in Central and Eastern Europe and continues the tradition of the Old Church Slavonic language. Interslavic shares grammar and common vocabulary with modern spoken Slavic languages in order to build a universal language tool that Slavic people can understand without any or with very minimal prior learning. It is an easily-learned language for those who want to use this language actively. Interslavic enables passive (e.g. receptive) understanding of the real Slavic languages. Non-Slavic people can use Interslavic as the door to the big Slavic world.*

*Zonal constructed languages are constructed languages made to facilitate communication between speakers of a certain group of closely related languages. They belong to the international auxiliary languages, but unlike languages like Esperanto and Volapük they are not intended to serve for the whole world, but merely for a limited linguistic or geographic area where they take advantage of the fact that the people of this zone understand these languages without having to learn them in a difficult way. Zonal languages include the ancient Sanskrit, Old Church Slavonic, and Lingua Franca. Zonal design can be partially found also in modern languages such as contemporary Hebrew, Indonesian, and Swahili.*

## ISO-690 citation example

MERUNKA, Vojtěch. *Interslavic zonal constructed language - an introduction for English-speakers.* Lukáš Lhoťan publishing, 1<sup>st</sup> ed. Prague 2018.  
ISBN (print) 978-80-907004-9-9  
ISBN (e-book) 978-80-904932-7-8

Support for this book was provided by the multi-genre international festival Days of Slavic culture, organised annually by the Slavic Union of the Czech Republic. The Slavic Union is a voluntary, independent, and non-political association uniting its registered members by their common interest. It is a separate legal entity Nr. 48133396 and operates in the Czech Republic under the Czech law. At the European executive agency EACEA (The Education, Audiovisual and Culture Executive Agency of the European Commission), it is registered under participant identity code Nr. 923564549 and is the contact subject for the Czech Republic at the International Foundation - Forum of Slavic Cultures, based in Ljubljana.

monograph, first edition, August 2018

811.16\* Slavic languages.  
811.92\* Artificial languages for use among human beings, auxiliary interlanguages.  
376\* Education, teaching, training of special groups of persons. Special schools.

proofread by Richard Selby, Czech University of Life Sciences, Prague

### reviewers and consultants

Natalia Bondarenko, Leo Tolstoy Institute of Languages and Cultures in Moscow

Olga Felkina, A. S. Pushkin Brest State University, Faculty of Philology

Emil Heršak, University of Zagreb, Faculty of Humanities and Social Sciences

Elpidoforos Lambriniadis, Metropolitan of Bursa, Theological School of Halki

Zdeněk Linhart, Commenius-Grundtvig training programmes

Jan van Steenbergen, Language Creation Society

Snezhina Stojanova, Plovdiv University, Faculty of Economics

Lina Yordanova, Trakia University in Stara Zagora, Faculty of Economics

Mateo Žagar, University of Zagreb, Faculty of Humanities and Social Sciences

load 500 copies

166 pages, 150 normalized pages

issued as the 19<sup>th</sup> publication (e-book as the 17<sup>th</sup> publication)

Lukáš Lhoťan Publishing

739 11 Pstruží 222

Czech Republic

© 2018, Vojtěch Merunka, author

© 2018, Lukáš Lhoťan, publisher

cover graphics

© 2018, Alice "Rusalka" Linhartová

this text was assembled and typeset thanks to the technology of Apple Inc.

to  
Iveta, Anna and Jan



# Preface

**Scire tuum nihil est, nisi te scire hoc sciatur.**

*Your knowledge is nothing when no one else knows that you know it.*

*Ničto jest tvoje vědění, až li jeho druhý ne zná.*

*Aulus Persius Flaccus, Sat. I-27*

**The best way to predict the future is to invent it.**

*Vymyslenie jest najlučším putem predpoviedania budúcnosti.*

*Alan Curtis Kay, 1971*

Dear reader, it is my duty to thank all of the people who have contributed to the creation, development and preservation of the Interslavic language.

First of all, I must acknowledge the brilliant Constantine the Philosopher (Cyril), a professor at the University of Constantinople in Magnaura (Πανδιδακτήριον της Μαγναύρας), philologist, alphabet and conlang creator and his brother Methodius, the first Slavic archbishop, Bible translator and author of many other religious and secular publications. Brothers Constantine and Methodius are honorably declared by the Western and Eastern churches as co-patron saints of united Europe. I also acknowledge those people who assisted Constantine and Methodius in their work: the disciples and followers Gorazd, Angelarios, Sava, Lazar, Clemens of Ohrid, Eastern Roman Emperor Michailos III, Patriarch Fotios of Constantinople (teacher of Constantine the Philosopher and rector of the University), princes Rostislav, Kocel and Bořivoj and the king, Svatoštokluk. Finally, I acknowledge enlightened Roman Pope Hadrian II and librarian Anastasius in Rome, as well as all those who in subsequent centuries at various places continued this pioneering work and preserved it. They are many other brothers and sisters of Preslav, Ohrid, Sázava, Senj, Croatian Islands, Holy Mountain Athos and many others from various nations to this day.

The Interslavic project was a great experience for me, because to a certain extent I probably touched problems and challenges as were solved by the Slavic language revivalists, reformers, designers and Interslavic idea propagators and defenders in the past. They are in alphabetical order: Bohuslav Balbín, Vjačeslav Bambas, Antonín Bernolák, Josef Dobrovský, Ljudevit Gaj, Josef Jungmann, Vuk Karadžić, Ján Kollár, Konstantin Maladinov, Pavel Šafárik, Ľudovít Štúr, Faust Vrančić, Matija Ziljski, Partenij Zografski and many others having our sincere respect and admiration.

I also want to honestly thank my intensely respectable colleagues from our Interslavic community and our supporters for their hard work, enthusiasm and significant contribution to the broadcasting of the Interslavic project idea in media, Facebook discussions, internet news, real business, etc. They are in alphabetical order: Bojan Antić, Karol Biegała, Petr Bolf, Ivan Canjar, Vratislav Datel, Emil Heršak, Petr Jandáček, Jozef Janočko, Artur Kamiński, Maria Kocór, Světlana Lavičková, Roberto Lombino, Václav Marhoul, Jozef Mikita, Lubor Mojdl, Andrej Pyžov, Steeven Radzikowski, Ondrej Rečník, Rostislav Řepka, Anna Řepková, Pavel Skrylev, Dušan Spáčil, Jan van Steenbergen namely for his knowledge and co-editing of our "Memorandum" (see page 27), Gabriel Svoboda, Michał Swat, Antonios A. Tachiaos, Andrej Teterevov, Tomáš Vaňák, Jan Vít, Leoš Wolny, Mateo Žagar and many others. And at last but not least to Rumjan Lazov for his lovely Cyrillic font and Filip Cvitić for his beautiful Glagolitic font.

Vojtěch Merunka, Prague 2018,  
[www.interslavic-language.org](http://www.interslavic-language.org), [www.neoslavonic.org](http://www.neoslavonic.org)

# Table of Contents

Preface .....	5
Index .....	11
<b>Introduction .....</b>	<b>17</b>
why do we need an artificial interslavic language?.....	18
motivation.....	20
why Interslavic instead of Russian?.....	21
where to use Interslavic?.....	22
Interslavic and Old Church Slavonic .....	23
alphabets .....	24
<b>Overview .....</b>	<b>25</b>
used abbreviations and acronyms.....	25
<b>Memorandum of the Interslavic Community about the languages Neoslavonic, Slovianski and Slovio .....</b>	<b>27</b>
<b>1. pronunciation and alphabet.....</b>	<b>33</b>
pronunciation .....	33
alphabet and orthography .....	33
basic and advanced orthography .....	35
soft pronunciation of consonants versus simplicity.....	36
palatalization .....	36
euphony of verbs.....	37
losing vowels "e" and "o" .....	37
1 <sup>st</sup> example .....	38
2 <sup>nd</sup> example .....	38
<b>2. sentence structure, word order .....</b>	<b>39</b>
1 <sup>st</sup> example .....	40
2 <sup>nd</sup> example .....	41
<b>3. definite and indefinite articles .....</b>	<b>43</b>
Bulgarian and Slavo-Macedonian exception .....	44
<b>4. nouns, cases, prepositions .....</b>	<b>45</b>
number .....	45
gender .....	45
cases.....	45
nominative case .....	46
accusative case .....	46
genitive case .....	46
locative case .....	46
dative case.....	46
instrumental case.....	47

vocative case .....	47
animate and inanimate masculine patterns .....	47
feminine patterns.....	48
neuter patterns .....	49
special feminine pattern kost (a bone) and dual number .....	49
prepositions.....	50
how to learn cases - declension symmetries.....	52
irregular declension patterns .....	52
appendix .....	53
<b>5. verbs to be and to have .....</b>	<b>55</b>
cases with verbs to be and to have.....	56
to be / to have complementarity.....	56
<b>6. query sentences, yes and no, negation .....</b>	<b>57</b>
yes and no, negation .....	58
<b>7. pronouns.....</b>	<b>59</b>
personal pronouns .....	59
hard pattern - pronoun toj, ta, to = the .....	60
soft pattern - pronoun vsej, vsa, vse = everybody, everything.....	60
soft pattern - pronouns on, ona, ono, oni = he, she, it, they .....	60
possessive pronouns moj = my, twoj = yours, naš = our, vaš = your .....	61
possessive pronouns jegov = his, its; jejin = her; jihny = their.....	62
interrogative pronouns kto, ktory = who; čto, kaký = what.....	62
interrogative pronoun koj.....	63
interrogative pronouns kogo, čego = whose .....	63
interrogative pronouns and their answers.....	63
relative pronouns in subordinate clauses - ktory=koj, kaký ... iže.....	64
<b>8. adjectives.....</b>	<b>65</b>
declension .....	66
gradation.....	67
descriptive gradation .....	67
irregular gradation .....	68
adjectives at noun positions.....	68
<b>9. numerals .....</b>	<b>69</b>
ordinal numbers .....	70
interrogative, demonstrative and indefinite number .....	71
fractions, set numbers, multiple numbers .....	72
<b>10. present tense of verbs.....</b>	<b>73</b>
hard conjugation pattern (-eš verbs) .....	73
soft conjugation pattern (-iš verbs) .....	74
irregular verbs byti, věděti, dati, idti, jesti .....	75



conversion of the subject to clause with verb byti = to be.....	110
conversion of the subject to clause with another verb than byti (to be).....	110
conversion of the entire clause .....	111
multiple attribute.....	111
capitalization.....	112
<b>20. word formation, diminution.....</b>	<b>113</b>
Latin and Greek words in Interslavic .....	113
words from other languages .....	114
word formation - suffixes .....	115
word formation - prefixes .....	115
diminution.....	116
<b>transition words .....</b>	<b>117</b>
transition of logic .....	117
transition of thought.....	120
pronouns.....	120
keyword repetition .....	120
synonyms.....	120
demonstrative pronouns .....	120
<b>Conclusion.....</b>	<b>121</b>
<b>Appendix .....</b>	<b>123</b>
Interslavic conversation .....	123
greetings .....	123
wish someone something.....	123
asking for help.....	124
introducing yourself .....	124
understanding .....	125
directions.....	126
time .....	127
shopping, hotel, restaurant.....	128
numbers .....	129
other useful words.....	129
Interslavic-English vocabulary .....	131
English-Interslavic vocabulary .....	139
<b>Bibliography.....</b>	<b>147</b>
<b>Interslavic projects .....</b>	<b>149</b>
internet news - IZVĚSTI.info .....	149
interslavic dictionary .....	151
Facebook group .....	151
speech synthesizer - generator.neoslavonic.org .....	151
false friends of the slavist.....	151

CISLa - Conference on Interslavic Language .....	152
SLOVJANI.info - professional journal .....	152
modern Slavic nations.....	154
our village.....	154
modern Slavic nations - in Cyrillic.....	155
our village - in Cyrillic .....	155
information flier for hotel guests .....	156
ecclesiastical texts .....	157
<b>optional alphabets .....</b>	<b>159</b>
ancient alphabets - Venetic/Etruscan, Glagolitic and old-Cyrillic .....	160
interslavic Braille .....	162
<b>grammar tables.....</b>	<b>163</b>

# Index

## A

ablative, 110, 111  
accusative, 47, 111  
active multilingualism, 152  
active participle, 97  
active voice, 89  
active-passive voice symmetry, 24  
adjectival participle, 96  
adjective, 39, 65  
Adriatic, 161  
Adriatic Veneti, 161  
advanced orthography, 35  
adverb, 39, 77  
adverbial participle, 98  
Alan Curtis Kay, 5  
Albanian, 39  
Amber Path, 161  
Anastasius, 5  
ancient Slavic alphabet, 162  
Andrej Pyžov, 5  
Andrej Teterevov, 5  
Angelarios, 5  
animate noun, 45  
animate pattern, 47  
Anna Řepková, 5  
Antonín Bernolák, 5  
Antonios A. Tachiaos, 5  
Appian, 161  
Arabic, 21, 39, 160  
Aramaic, 39  
Arebica, 160  
Artur Kamiński, 5  
aspect, 92  
astrological symbols, 161  
athematic verbs, 23  
Athos, 5  
*augmentative*, 67  
Aulus Persius Flaccus, 5

## B

Baltic, 161  
Balto-Slavic, 20  
Bible, 20  
Bohuslav Balbín, 5  
Bojan Antić, 5  
Bojan Antics, 160

Bořivoj, 5  
Bosnian script, 160  
branched tree, 39, 42  
Bulgarian, 44, 55  
Byzantium, 161

## C

capitalization, 112  
case, 45, 109  
CEEOL database, 153  
Celtic, 160  
centum Indo-European, 160  
CERN, 22  
CISLa, 152  
civil participation, 152  
clause, 42, 105, 106, 110  
Clemens of Ohrid, 5  
comparative, 67  
complementarity of *to be* and *to have*, 56  
conditional, 91  
conference, 152  
conforming attribute, 109  
conjugation, 39  
conjunction, 101  
Constantine the Philosopher, 5, 17, 20, 161  
Constantinople, 5  
containers, 72  
control element, 106  
coordinate clause, 105  
coupling clauses, 101  
creation adjectives, 115  
Croatia, 162  
Croatian Islands, 5  
Cyril, 5, 17, 20, 161  
Cyrillic, 24, 33, 114, 161  
Cyrillic **j**, 155  
Czech Ministry of Culture, 153

## D

Daniel Bunčić, 151  
dative, 46  
decimal number, 72  
declension, 39  
declension pattern, 23  
declension symmetry, 52  
definite article, 44, 60

demonstrative pronoun, 43, 120  
descriptive gradation, 67  
descriptive gradation of adverbs, 79  
diacritics č, š, ž, 33  
digital economy, 152  
diminution, 116  
direct gradation of adverbs, 79  
direct object, 47  
double negative, 58  
double-blind peer review, 153  
dual, 45, 73  
Dušan Spáčil, 5

## E

ě, 33  
ě=ѣ, 35  
EACEA, 153  
Eastern Slavic languages, 37  
e-democracy, 152  
Ellis Howell Minns, 161  
Emil Heršak, 5  
emotion, 103  
Enetoi, 161  
English-like word order, 40  
Esperanto, 18, 19, 20, 27, 30  
Este, 160  
Etruscan, 160  
Etruscan alphabet, 160  
Euboian Greek script, 160  
euphony, 73, 74  
euphony of verbs, 37  
European Union, 22  
exclamation, 103

## F

Facebook, 5  
false friends, 151  
Farsi, 160  
feminine, 45  
feminine pattern, 48  
Filip Cvitić, 5, 161, 162  
flavorization, 28  
Fotios, 5  
fraction, 72  
free word order, 42  
fusional language, 39  
future tense, 87, 88

## G

Gabriel Svoboda, 5

gender, 45, 109  
genitive, 46, 71, 111  
German, 53  
Germanic, 37  
Germanic runes, 160  
gerund, 95  
Glagolica, 20  
Glagolitic, 20, 24, 33, 161  
Gorazd, 5  
GOST standard, 33  
gradation, 67  
gradation of adverbs, 79  
Great Moravia, 161  
Greek, 37, 39, 42, 45, 53, 113, 114, 162  
Greek alphabet, 24, 33

## H

hard pronoun pattern, 60  
hard verb pattern, 73  
*has-a* relationship, 56  
Hebrew, 19, 39  
Herodotos, 161

## I

і kratke, 33  
idiom, 22  
idioms, 79  
Ido, 20  
ie, 33  
Illyrian, 160  
illyro-slavinity, 161  
imperative, 81  
imperfective aspect, 92  
inanimate noun, 45  
inanimate pattern, 47  
indefinite article, 43  
indefinite numeral, 71  
indicative, 67  
indirect object, 46  
Indo-Aryan languages, 39  
Indoeuropean, 160  
Indonesian, 19  
infinitive, 73  
infinitive stem, 23  
inflecting language, 39  
instrumental, 47  
interjection, 103  
Interlingua, 19, 20, 30  
interrogative pronoun, 62  
interrogative, 57

interrogative pronoun, 63  
Interslavic, 121  
Interslavic Community, 17  
Interslavic dialogue, 28  
Interslavic project, 18  
iota, 155  
IPA, 34  
irregular declension pattern, 52  
irregular pattern, 49  
irregular verb, 83  
irregular verbs, 23, 75  
irregular vocative, 47  
*is-a* relationship, 56  
ISO 9, 33  
isolated adjective, 68  
Ivan Canjar, 5  
IZVESTI.info, 149

## J

Jan Hus, 33  
Ján Kollár, 5  
Jan van Steenbergen, 5, 151  
Jan Vít, 5  
jatj, 35  
jer, 33, 35  
jor, 35  
Josef Dobrovský, 5  
Josef Jungmann, 5  
jotization, 35, 36  
jotization before vowels, 33  
jotized vowels, 155  
Jozef Janočko, 5  
Jozef Mikita, 5  
Judeo-Spanish, 160

## K

Karol Biegała, 5  
knowledge transfer, 152  
Kocel, 5  
Konstantin Maladinov, 5

## L

Ladino, 160  
Language Creation Society, 151  
Latin, 24, 33, 37, 39, 42, 45, 53, 113  
Latin j, 155  
Latino sine flexion, 20  
Latvian, 39  
Lazar, 5  
Leoš Wolny, 5

Ligurian, 160  
Lingua Terrana, 20  
Lithuanian, 39  
locative, 46  
longer present verb stem, 73  
losing effect, 37  
losing vowel e, 23, 37  
losing vowel o, 23, 37  
lost-less clause transformation, 24  
L-participle, 83, 91  
Lubor Mojdl, 5, 160  
Ľudovít Štúr, 5  
Lusatian, 161

## M

Magnaura, 5  
Maria Kocór, 5  
Mark Hučko, 30  
marketing, 22  
masculine, 45  
masculine pattern, 48  
Mateo Žagar, 5  
Matija Ziljski, 5, 18  
medial voice, 89  
memorandum, 18  
metaphor, 22  
Methodius, 5, 17, 20  
Michailos III, 5  
Michał Swat, 5  
Middle Ages, 29  
multilingualism, 152  
multinational activities, 152  
multiplicative article, 72  
Muslims, 160

## N

nasal vowels, 23  
nasals, 35  
National Library of the Czech Republic, 153  
natural grammatical forms, 24  
natural numbers, 69  
negation, 58  
neuter, 45  
neuter pattern, 49  
nominative, 46  
non-accented Latin letters, 33  
non-conforming, 109  
non-inflected word, 77  
non-Slavic people, 21

noun, 39  
number, 109

## O

object, 47  
object part, 39  
Occidental, 20  
Ohrid, 5  
old Bulgarian, 161  
Old Church Slavonic, 17, 21, 23, 27, 30, 35, 44, 69, 155  
Old Slavic, 37  
omega, 157  
Ondrej Rečnik, 5  
ordinal number, 70  
Orthodox Church, 17, 20, 23  
orthography, 114  
Ottoman Empire, 160

## P

Padua, 160  
pair, 72  
palatalization, 23, 34, 36, 65, 73  
paleo-slavic, 35  
Pandidaktirion tis Magnauras  
(Πανδιδάκτηριον της Μαγναύρας), 5  
Partenij Zografski, 5  
participles, 24  
particle, 102, 105  
particle **li**, 57, 102  
passive multilingualism, 152  
passive participle, 90, 97  
passive understanding, 21  
passive voice, 90  
past passive participle, 95  
past stem, 73  
past tense, 83, 86, 88  
Pavel Šafárik, 5  
Pavel Skrylev, 5  
peer review, 153  
perfective aspect, 92  
personal pronouns overuse, 22  
Petr Bolf, 5  
Petr Jandáček, 5  
phonetic orthography, 114  
plagiarized Slovio, 30  
Plinius, 161  
Polish, 35, 37, 44  
Polish word order, 44  
position of words, 39

possessive pronoun, 61, 62  
Prague, 162  
preposition, 39, 50, 109  
prepositions, 46  
present stem, 73  
present tense, 86, 88  
Preslav, 5  
prior past tense, 85, 86, 88  
prior-future tense, 88  
prior-present tense, 86, 88  
problem of **i/y**, 66  
pronoun, 39, 59  
pronoun prefixes, 63  
proto-Cyrillic, 161  
Proto-Slavic, 17  
Proto-Slavs, 161  
proverbial part, 39  
proverbial structure, 77  
Ptolemaios, 161

## Q

querying particle, 102  
Qur'an, 21

## R

receptive understanding, 21  
reduced vowels, 23, 35, 37  
**relative pronoun iže**, 64  
review, 153  
Roberto Lombino, 5  
Roman-Catholic Church, 17, 20  
Rome, 5  
Rostislav, 5  
Rostislav Řepka, 5  
Rumjan Lazov, 5  
Russian, 18, 21, 22  
Russian Empire, 21  
Russian Federation, 21

## S

Sanskrit, 39  
Sava, 5  
Sázava, 5  
second person, 75  
Semitic languages, 39  
Senj, 5  
sentiment, 103  
Seversk, 20  
shortening of present verbs, 74  
simplified orthography, 35

Slavic movement, 153  
Slavic Union, 153  
Slavisk, 20  
Slavo-Germanian, 20  
Slavo-Iranian, 20  
Slavo-Macedonian, 43, 44, 55  
Slovak, 19, 37  
Slovenian, 55, 161  
Slovianski, 28  
Slovianto, 29  
Slovio, 20, 27  
SLOVJANI.info, 152, 153  
soft consonants, 36  
soft pronoun pattern, 60  
soft pronunciation, 36  
soft sign, 33, 34  
soft verb pattern, 74  
softening the preceding consonants, 35  
softer present verb stem, 74  
speech generator, 38  
Steeven Radzikowski, 5  
Steven Radzikowski, 151  
stress, 33  
Styrian region, 160  
subject part, 39  
subject reference, 59  
subjunctive mood, 82  
subordinate clause, 106  
superlative, 67  
Svetlana Lavičková, 5  
syllabic **l**, 23  
syllabic **l** and **r**, 35  
syllabic **r**, 23  
syllable, 33  
symmetries between pronouns,  
    numerals and adverbs, 78  
symmetry **ě/i**, 59  
symmetry **o/e**, 59, 66  
synonym, 120  
Syrian, 161

## T

Tacitus, 161  
Tomáš Vaňák, 5  
tourism, 152  
tourism, 22  
tourist attraction, 162  
transformation clause - gerund, 95  
transformation of the subject, 110  
transition of logic, 117

transition of thought, 120  
transition words and phrases, 117  
transport, 22  
triple negative, 58  
Turkic, 161

**U**

UN 1987, 33  
UNGEGN, 33  
United Nations Group of Experts on  
    Geographical Names, 33  
University of Constantinople, 5

## V

Václav Marhoul, 5  
Venedi, 161  
Veneti, 160  
Venetic, 160  
Venetic script, 160  
Veneto, 160  
verb conjugation, 23  
verb part, 39  
verb tenses, 23  
verb *to be*, 22, 55, 75, 83, 87, 91, 110  
verb *to eat*, 75, 83  
verb *to go*, 75, 83  
verb *to have*, 22, 55  
verbal noun, 95, 111  
Vjačeslav Bambas, 5, 18  
vocative, 47  
Volapük, 20  
vowel **e**, 52, 59  
vowel **i**, 59  
vowel jotization, 155  
vowel **o**, 52, 59  
vowel **y**, 59  
Vratislav Datel, 5  
Vuk Karadžić, 5, 155

## W

Wiching of Nitra, 21  
word-building tools, 29  
writing commas between clauses, 107  
wrong homonym, 151

## Y

Yiddish, 160



# Introduction

Welcome to the book of the Interslavic language - Neoslavonic edition, which belongs to the non-commercial *Interslavic language project* of the Interslavic Community. Interslavic is a "zonal constructed language" intended to facilitate communication among the speakers and writers of the modern day Slavic languages - *Belorussian, Bosnian, Bulgarian, Croatian, Czech, Kashubian, Slavo-Macedonian, Montenegrin, Polish, Russian, Rusyn, Serbian, Slovak, Slovenian, Sorbian* (i.e. *Lusatian, Wendish*), *Ukrainian* and their various dialects - all of which derive from an original "Proto-Slavic" tongue, which over thousands of years, morphed into very divergent "dialects," each becoming a separate language unto itself. ([www.neoslavonic.org](http://www.neoslavonic.org))

Over half of Europe's territory is inhabited by Slavic-speaking communities; moreover, the worldwide population of people of Slavic descent is estimated to be about 400 millions.

All our Slavic languages derive from that common Proto-Slavic tongue, knowledge of one Slavic language will often allow one to have at least a rough understanding of a text written in another Slavic language - but not sufficiently to achieve thorough comprehension. This fact has inspired linguists and others over the centuries to attempt to create a universal Slavic language that would be more understandable to all Slavs. Among these include Old Church Slavonic, developed in the 9<sup>th</sup> century by two Byzantine Greek missionaries and co-patrons saints of Europe, the brothers Constantine the Philosopher (Cyril) and Methodius of Thessalonica, as well as dozens of other projects to the present day. What they have in common is that they are all based on the assumption that the Slavic languages are still similar enough to make such an auxiliary language possible at all.

Interslavic language design is based on the harmony of the following three principles:

1. To share grammar and common vocabulary with modern spoken Slavic languages in order to build a universal language that Slavic people can understand without any prior learning.
2. To be an easily-learned language for those who want to use this language actively. Non-Slavic people can use this language as the entrance door to the big Slavic world. We believe that knowledge of Interslavic enables both Slavic and non-Slavic people greater passive (e.g. receptive) understanding and better learning of the real national Slavic languages.
3. Interslavic follows the tradition of the Old Church Slavonic language (OCS). OCS was the first literary Slavic language, believed to have been artificially developed in the 9<sup>th</sup> century by two brave Byzantine Greek missionaries Saints Cyril and Methodius, who were credited with standardizing the Slavic dialects and using it for translating the Bible and other ecclesiastical texts as a tool of the Christianization of the Slavic people. OCS is still frequently used by the Orthodox Church and sometimes also by the Roman-Catholics in many Slavic countries up to the present day. Neoslavonic version of Interslavic is designed as the modernized and simplified but still sufficiently compatible version of this old language.

Our Interslavic project is not the only one of its kind. Over the last two centuries, several other similar constructed languages were proposed, the most progress in which was made during the 19<sup>th</sup> century by the Slovenian priest and linguist Matija Majar Ziljski and the Czech translator and writer Václav František (Vjačeslav) Bambas. Our project has also been inspired by the successful reconstruction of the modern Serbian, Czech, Slovak, Indonesian, Arabic and Hebrew languages.

Our Memorandum says, that our Interslavic language project is based exclusively on forms that exist throughout the Slavic language continuum and that Esperanto-like artificiality is carefully avoided: every word stem, grammatical ending or morphological element can be found in several Slavic languages and ideally in all of them. This design strategy locates the Interslavic language at the very center of living Slavic languages.

## **why do we need an artificial interslavic language?**

We know that about one-half (maybe more) of the total number of Slavic-speaking people use the Russian language. If the Russian language is sufficiently simple and understandable to other Slavs without learning, our project would be unnecessary; but unfortunately it is not. Russian is far from the imaginary linguistic centre of Slavic languages. It has a specific alphabet, phonetics, grammar and significant portion of its vocabulary without the universal Slavic validity. Of course, the same holds true in varying instances for all of our modern national Slavic languages.



European countries with Slavic as an official language (from Wikimedia)



Indo-European language tree (from Nature 449, 665-667, Oct. 2007)

Our strategy is to develop and broadcast Interslavic project in such a way that it can be naturally incorporated into the collection of spoken Slavic languages as an auxiliary language tool, enabling international dialogue, knowledge and cultural transfer without the need of translating information into several national languages.

Our experience is that speakers of Slavic languages tend to perceive the Neoslavonic/Interslavic language as either an ancient or remote dialect of their own native language, or as a neighboring language closely related to their own. People are often surprised how much they can understand of it.

Spoken languages are living things and we know that no constructed language (Esperanto, Interlingua, ...) or reconstructed modern national language (Slovak, Hebrew, Indonesian, ...) in the world is used in the exact same form as when it was first published. Therefore we welcome anybody – linguist, non-linguist, native speaker, non-native speaker – to join our ranks and work with us on this great task!

## **motivation**

The name of Neoslavonic (**Novoslovjansky** in original reading) resembles the Old (Church) Slavonic language, which was the first literary Slavic language, developed by the 9<sup>th</sup> century Byzantine Greek missionaries Saints Constantine the Philosopher (Cyril) and Methodius who were credited with standardizing vulgar Slavic dialects and using them for translating the Bible and other ecclesiastical texts as part of the Christianization of the all Slavic peoples (Slavs = Slovani).

The Neoslavonic version of the **Interslavic constructed language** (conlang) is dated from 2009. It is an attempt to create a modern artificial auxiliary Interslavic language made to facilitate both written and spoken communication between speakers of modern Slavic nations. Neoslavonic design is based on historical stages of evolution of the actual Slavic languages starting from the Old (Church) Slavonic. The idea of an artificial universal Slavic language is not new. Since the 19<sup>th</sup> century to the present day, approximately a hundred artificial Slavic languages have been created, most with a Slavic basis, but some mixed (Balto-Slavic, Slavo-Germanian or Slavo-Iranian).

Interslavic is inspired by the following:

- The Esperanto-like constructed language by Mark Hučko called Slovio,
- the similar language Slovianski, which is now a collaborative partner with Neoslavonic in the common project Medžuslovjansky (*Interslavic*),
- Glagolica and similar projects, also now collaborative partners within our Interslavic project group, and
- the contemporary spoken modern dialects (Bulgarian, Russian, Serbian, Croatian, ...) of Church Slavonic, which are directly based on the original Old Church Slavonic as they are used by the Orthodox and Roman-Catholic Church.

Interslavic is one of many artificial Indo-European languages like Esperanto, Ido, Interlingua, Latino sine flexione, Lingua Terrana, Occidental, Volapük, Slovio, Glagolitic, Slavisk, Seversk, and many more. Plenty of these languages prefer simplicity and reduction of grammar, which, in the case of Esperanto or Slovio, makes a comic impression.

This is why in my opinion, reduction of everything *ad absurdum* is not the right way. A universal language should primarily have a logical structure - a clear, understandable, but morphologically rich set of rules with minimum exceptions and idioms. Here, there is no space for unnatural structures made from a combination of random consonants and vowels. A universal language should not even have too abbreviated words and unnatural grammatical building blocks. This means that it should (for better clarity) prefer words in natural, full and euphonic forms. Here, in my opinion, Esperanto has failed (e.g. the Esperanto system of unnatural pronouns and adverbs mutually differing in only one vowel or consonant without any natural analogy to some real language).

This all means that Interslavic is created as an auxiliary language that appears to be almost the same as real spoken languages. As such, it is ideal for being used for the following purposes:

- To share grammar and a common vocabulary with modern spoken Slavic languages in order to build a universal language that Slavic people can understand without any - or very minimal - prior learning.

- To be an easy-learned language for those who want to use it actively. Non-Slavic people can use this language as the door to the “big Slavic world”. We believe that knowledge of Interslavic enables both Slavic and non-Slavic people greater passive (e.g. receptive) understanding and better learning of the living Slavic languages.
- To be a basic conversation platform for Slavs and non-Slavs alike, without having to learn a specific real Slavic language.
- Interslavic continues the tradition of Church Slavonic. It is designed as the modernized and simplified - but still sufficiently compatible - version of Church Slavonic.

Interslavic is also an interesting experiment of alternative history: If there was not such strong pressure from the Frankish Latin-oriented church (e.g. Wiching of Nitra and his band) against the Moravian Church in the 9<sup>th</sup> century, the invasion of the Hungarians into Central Europe and the subsequent collapse of contacts between Moravia (now a territory of both the Czech and Slovak Republics) and Bulgarian, Serbian and Kiev (later Russian) states, it is possible to imagine a hypothetic different evolution of the Slavic early Middle Age language - we have seen a similar phenomenon in the Arabic World: After the end of natural linguistic unity during the Middle Ages, the modernized universal Arabic language based on the religious language of the Qur'an still prevails. It is an artificial language which is close enough to the various contemporary spoken national dialects of Arabic that it is recognized as the standard for communication between Arabic nations and for contact with foreigners and used as an auxiliary language by both state apparatus and the media.

## **why Interslavic instead of Russian?**

In this project we cannot ignore the existence of the Russian language. Russian is the largest spoken Slavic language. The number of its users together exceeds that of all other Slavic languages. Russian also holds a strong international position. It is a language of the UN, a language of the astronauts, etc.; it is taught in the USA, China, India, Iran and Arabic countries, and is often spelling as the only Slavic language under “Slavic Studies” programs at foreign universities.

We can certainly accept that the Russian Federation, the largest country in the world, is Slavic and that historically the Russian Empire was for a long time the only country in which the ruling class belonged to a Slavic nation. Also, we must acknowledge the past and present performances of Russian science, technology, culture and sport.

But such Russian dominance has also given way to problems of frequent Russian-centric underestimating perceptions of other Slavic nations as being only “derivative” (or “mutilated”) Russians.

Regardless of the actual politics and mutual relations between Russian and other Slavic nations, there are very serious reasons as to why we cannot use Russian as the auxiliary Interslavic language. Key among these is the fact that most non-Russian Slavic speakers would not be able to comprehend Russian without at least some prior Russian language study.

This is because Russian is part of the “eastern branch” of the Slavic languages, and although it is closely related to the simplified Church Slavonic, it contains language style elements which others Slavs cannot automatically understand because these “features”

are absent in their “western branch” and “southern branch” native Slavic tongues. In the same way, Russians do not automatically understand Polish, Czech, Croatian, Slovenian or Macedonian speakers. Some of the Russian languages specific elements include:

- Specific Cyrillic alphabet and specific English-oriented Latin transcription, which is very different from Latin orthographies of other Slavic nations (e.g. Bosnian, Croatian, Czech, Montenegrin, Polish, Serbian, Slovak, Slovenian and Sorbian).
- Unlike other Slavic languages or the common Indo-European standard, the Russian language rarely uses the verb *to have* or the present tense of the verb *to be*, but uses descriptive idioms instead.
- Unlike other Slavic languages, the Russian language overuses personal pronouns (*I, you, he, she, we, they*) in verb conjugations, in contrast to most other Slavic speakers utilizing either the primary verb form with varying tense suffixes or a *coupling* of the primary verb with present tense conjugations of the verb *to be* verb (e.g. *I do, you do* = **dělaju, dělaješ**; *I did, you did* = **jesm dělal, jesi dělal** but Russian: **я делаю, ты делаешь, я делал, ты делал**).
- Specific Russian phonetics (e.g. oversoftness, pronunciation of written **o** as [a], additional vowels between consonants, ...).
- Russian vocabulary has specific word subset, even of basic words (e.g. **лошадь/lošadž** = *a horse*, **собака/sobaka** = *a dog*, **туман/tuman** = *mist*, **бумага/bumaga** = *paper*, ...), which are not present in other Slavic languages.
- Many specific idioms and metaphors are also specific only for Russian.

## where to use Interslavic?

Modern people are travelling much more than in the past. Six Slavic languages are official languages of the European Union member states. Apart from the long time separation of Slavic nations, Slavic people still feel their mutual cohesiveness and affinity. This is often well manifested during tourism, business and social events, when Slavic people from miscellaneous nations tend to speak together not in English but in some randomly assembled common interslavic language, which is sufficient for many situations. The Neoslavonic edition of the Interslavic language is therefore an original and professional response to this phenomenon as follows:

1. A universal common auxiliary language usable in business, international transport (information texts and labels in trains, buses, planes, ...), marketing (product manuals and description), tourism (info leaflets, news, ...) and social events. Neoslavonic was intended for use as an auxiliary tool in scientific and research groups of people from Slavic countries, such as scientists at CERN labs.
2. An auxiliary language tool to facilitate rapid knowledge acquisition of Slavic languages using a receptive method, by which a person is able to gradually receive some real Slavic language using his/her native Slavic language background combined with Neoslavonic grammar. During this learning process, Neoslavonic is step-by-step gradually replaced by the knowledge of the new adopted language.
3. An auxiliary language demonstrating cultural and historical reality for interested people in experimental archeology in order to bring together enthusiasts from various Slavic nations.

4. A practical usable auxiliary language for multinational Slavic groups in tourist destinations, historical and cultural places and exhibitions and religious communities (Slavic Orthodox Church for example).
5. A practical tool to demonstrate the similarity of today's Slavic languages for teaching and learning purposes. This covers also historical themes where Interslavic imitates the original Old Slavonic language (e.g. movies, theatre, ...).

## Interslavic and Old Church Slavonic

Interslavic language can be considered as a dialect of (Old) Church Slavonic which has evolved into a modern Slavic standard. Interslavic can serve as a substitute for Church Slavonic. The biggest differences between *Old* and *New* Interslavic are in some grammatical endings, vocalization and the presence of words from modern Slavic languages. It should be noted that the *Old* Slavonic also has its own dialects (e.g. Russian, Ukrainian, Czech, Croatian, Serbian, Bulgarian, ...) which mutually differ in pronunciation and details of grammar. Neoslavonic is not so far from them, as it has been approved in orthodox monasteries in the south-eastern Europe. The main characteristics of Neoslavonic are:

1. Interslavic is well balanced between western, southern and eastern Slavic languages. Therefore, it may sometimes seem surprisingly old-Serbian for Serbian speakers, old-Czech for Czech speakers, old-Slovenian for Slovene speakers etc.
2. Interslavic follows phonetic changes which have occurred in the evolution of modern Slavic languages. This is the loss of nasal vowels, for example.
3. Interslavic has a limited and regularized collection of declension and conjugation patterns. Moreover it has numerous miscellaneous symmetries between its grammatical rules – i.e. the same or analogous element shares the same rule in all its occurrences.
4. Interslavic unites concepts of determinate and indeterminate forms of adjectives. This is common in most modern Slavic languages.
5. Interslavic replaces reduced vowel **ь** by losing vowel **e** and standard or losing **o** for the hard reduced vowel **ь**.
  - a. Soft reduced vowel **j/ь** is used only for consonant softening.
  - b. There is the syllabic **r** when -r- is placed between consonants without any vowel.
  - c. Syllabic **I** is written with additional vowel **o** as **ol** (eg. **polny**).
  - d. One-consonant prefixes could be amended by **-o-** (e.g. **ko-**, **vo-**, **so-**).
6. Interslavic unites the concept of verb conjugation to only two regular patterns. All verbs (except for only a few irregular verbs) belong to either a hard or soft pattern. There is no difference between so-called thematic and athematic verbs.
7. Pronoun and adjective declination share the same declension pattern.
8. Vowels in all past verb tense endings follow the same vowels from the infinitive stem. (e.g. **dělal**, **dělah**, **dělaše...** = **dělati**; **viděl**, **viděh**, **viděše...** = **viděti**)
9. Second palatalization of noun conjugation is not supported.

10. There are both adjective and adverb verbal participles. Total numbers of participle species is four: active present, passive present, active past and passive past.
11. There is active/passive voice symmetry between the verb *to be* and the verb *to have*. These two verbs create two voice forms of the same ontological concept.
12. There are 6 symmetrical verb tenses in three levels of time: two past, two present and two future. There is lost-less clause transformation among these time levels.

Thus, although Interslavic is an artificial language and is much more regular than contemporary spoken Slavic languages, it is not reduced to an unnatural level like Esperanto or Slovio. Interslavic contains only natural grammatical forms which are the same or very similar to those in contemporary Slavic languages. Like in natural Slavic languages, because Interslavic does not reduce the grammar and phonetics to Esperanto or Slovio levels, Slavic speakers using Interslavic can make the same errors in conjugation patterns (using different vowels etc.) as Slavs of various nations today normally do when they speak in non-native Slavic language with each other (for example, when an Ukrainian speaks Czech or a Pole speaks Croatian, etc.)

## **alphabets**

Of course, Cyrillic and Latin are two equal options for writing Interslavic, but there are yet more interesting options. First of all there are the Greek and Glagolitic alphabets. Although the Greeks have had long and historical contact with the Slavs, the Greek language does not have a standardized way of writing Slavic words and names.

Glagolitic is a unique decorative writing option, which has recently had renewed interest in Croatia. Glagolitic and other interesting writing options (e.g. Hebrew alphabet, Arabic/Farsi, etc.) are noted in the appendix.

# Overview

This book consists of the following 20 essential chapters, which explains step-by-step the grammar and morphology of the Interslavic Language:

1. pronunciation and alphabet
2. sentence structure, word order
3. definite and indefinite article
4. nouns, cases, prepositions
5. verbs to be, to have
6. query sentences, yes and no
7. pronouns
8. adjectives
9. numerals
10. present tense of verbs
11. adverbs, idioms
12. imperative of verbs
13. past tenses of verbs
14. future tenses of verbs
15. medial, passive, conditional, aspect of verbs
16. verbal nouns, participles
17. conjunctions, particles and interjections
18. sentences with coordinate and subordinate clauses, writing commas
19. nonconforming attributes, transformations, capitalization
20. word formation, diminution

## used abbreviations and acronyms

<i>sent.</i>	sentence	<i>num.</i>	number
<i>clause</i>	clause	<i>pers.</i>	personal
<i>subj.</i>	subject	<i>dem.</i>	demonstrative
<i>obj.</i>	object	<i>int.</i>	interrogative
<i>prov.</i>	proverbial	<i>rel.</i>	relative
<i>sg.</i>	singular number	<i>indef.</i>	indefinite
<i>pl.</i>	plural number	<i>v.</i>	verb
<i>du.</i>	dual number	<i>inf.</i>	infinitive
<i>m.</i>	masculine	<i>imp.</i>	imperative
<i>f.</i>	feminine	<i>cond.</i>	conditional
<i>n.</i>	neuter	<i>pres.</i>	present tense
<i>noun</i>	noun	<i>past</i>	past tense
<i>N</i>	nominative case	<i>fut.</i>	future tense
<i>G</i>	genitive case	<i>pf.</i>	perfective aspect
<i>D</i>	dative case	<i>ipf.</i>	imperfective aspect
<i>A</i>	accusative case	<i>adv.</i>	adverb
<i>V</i>	vocative case	<i>prep.</i>	preposition
<i>L</i>	locative case	<i>conj.</i>	conjugation
<i>I</i>	instrumental case	<i>part.</i>	particle
1.	1 <sup>st</sup> person of verb	<i>pref.</i>	prefix
2.	2 <sup>nd</sup> person of verb	<i>suff.</i>	suffix
3.	3 <sup>rd</sup> person of verb	<i>inter.</i>	interjection
<i>adj.</i>	adjective	<i>NS</i>	Neoslavonic
<i>pron.</i>	pronoun	<i>OCS</i>	Old Church Slavonic



# **Memorandum of the Interslavic Community about the languages Neoslavonic, Slovianski and Slovio**

## **INTRODUCTION**

The Slavic languages are a relatively coherent language group. Knowledge of one Slavic language is often sufficient to get at least a rough understanding of what a text in any other Slavic language is about. During the course of history, this fact has inspired linguists and others to build a universal Slavic language that would be understandable for all Slavs, including the famous Old Church Slavonic language from the 9<sup>th</sup> century, as well as dozens of other projects from the 16<sup>th</sup> century onwards. What they have in common is that they are all based on the assumption that the Slavic languages are similar enough to make such a language possible at all.

## **SLOVIO**

Mr. Mark Hučko was one of the first who picked up this idea in the digital era. He made his Slovio in 1999 on almost the same principles as Esperanto, but using Slavic word roots instead. Initially, the project was received with some enthusiasm on the Internet, but interest in it later fizzled. One significant drawback of the Slovio language is the artificial character of its grammar. Slavic vocabulary is used only for word stems, but suffixes and many other grammatical elements were taken from Esperanto or English, or designed artificially. For non-Slavs, this language may serve as a kind of Esperanto with the advantage that Slavic people can understand some of it; nonetheless, for Slavs the entire concept comes across as unnatural and sometimes ridiculous. As a result, Slovio never gained acceptance, and by now it has practically vanished from the scene.

## **VOVEDENJE**

Slovjanske jezyky sut grupa sobě relativno razumivých jezykov. Znanju jednogoto slovjanskogo jezyka jest mnogaždy najmenše dostatečno domysliti grubo razumění smysla textov v drugyh slovjanskyh jezykah. Tutoj fakt v tečenju věkov inspirovaše lingvisty i druge ljudi tvoriti univerzalny slovjansky jezyk, iže by byl razumivy vsim Slovjanom, příčitajući přehvalny Staroslovjansky crkveny jezyk i takože desetice drugyh projektov od 16-ogo věka dalěje. Vse tute projekty byli zajedno postavěne na předpoložení, že slovjanske jezyky sut sobě dostatečno podobne do možnogo dělanja takogo jezyka.

## **SLOVIO**

Gospod Mark Hučko běše jedin iz prvyh, kto postignuše digitalnu eru. On sotvoríše svoje Slovio v 1999 na blizko podobnyh principah kako Esperanto, no odlišeno od Esperanta s slovjanskymi korěnami slov. Iznačala běše projekt prijaty na Internetu s dehověním, no potom je interes v njego izčeznul. Jedin iz priznačnyh nedostatkov jezyka Slovio jest umětny charakter jego grammatiky. Slovjansky slovník jest koriščeny samo v korěnah slov, no suffixy i mnogo drugyh grammatičnyh elementov byli izbrane iz Esperanta ili anglijskogo ili sut byli autorom umětno předloženi. Neslovjanom tutoj jezyk može služiti kako poddialekt Esperanta s prinosom častečnogo razuměnía od Slovjanov, ale Slovjaní tutoj vsej koncept čujut neprirodnym i někogda směšnym. V razrěšenji Slovio nikogda ne bylo prijato, i nyně jest praktično izčeznulo iz sceny.

## THE INTERSLAVIC PROJECT

Most other projects past and present have chosen a more naturalistic approach, which has accumulated today into our two collaborative community projects: Novoslovenski (Neoslavonic) and Slovianski (Slavic). Both share a similar, naturalistic grammar, a common vocabulary and one common goal: to describe a universal Slavic language that Slavs can understand without any prior learning and use actively after some minimal learning only. This language, called Interslavic, is based exclusively on forms that exist throughout the Slavic language continuum, and artificiality is carefully avoided: every word stem, grammatical ending or morphological element can be found in several Slavic languages, ideally in all of them. This design strategy locates Interslavic at the very center of the living Slavic languages.

In addition, speakers can easily mix words or other elements from their mother tongue into Interslavic, which enables them to make themselves clearer to other Slavic speakers, and also allows them to use Interslavic as a transient tool for faster and easier learning of another Slavic language. Likewise, Interslavic can easily be manipulated by using characteristics from the language(s) of a specific target group. We call these processes "flavori-zation".

Our experience is that speakers of Slavic languages tend to perceive Interslavic as either an ancient or remote dialect of their own language, or a neighboring language closely related to their own. People are often surprised how much they can understand of it. Our strategy is to develop this auxiliary language in such a way that it can be naturally incorporated into the collection of spoken Slavic languages, to enable Interslavic dialogue, knowledge and cultural transfer without the need of translating information into several national languages.

## MEDŽUSLOVJANSKY PROJEKT

Bolša čast projektov iz prošloga ili sučnoga vrěmene izbrala sobě prirodnejši pristup, iže se dnes izvršil do dvoх sorabotajučih sobornyh projektov: Novoslovjansky i Sloviansky. Oba dva učestjut podobnu prirodnу grammatiku, i imajut zajedno jedin slovnik i jednu cělј: Popisati univerzalny Slovjansky jezik, jemuže by vsi Slovjani razuměli bez nikakogo předhodnogo učenja i jegože by koristili samo posle někakogo minimalnogo učenja. Toj jezik nazvany medžuslovjansky jest osnovany odlučajno na formah, iže izpolno sustvujut v prostranstvu slovjanskyh jezikov i jih umětnost jest promyšleno od-klonjena: vsekaky slovny koren, gramatično zakončenje ili morfologičny element jest možno naiti v mnogyh slovjanskyh jezikah, idealno v vših iz njih. Ta strategija předloženja nastavuje medžuslovjansky jezik do samoj srđiny živyh slovjanskyh jezikov.

Navyše, govorci mogut udobno měšati slova ili druge elementy iz svojego rodnogo jezyka do medžuslovjanskogo, čto jih dělaje vyše razumivymi drugym slovjanskym govorcam, i takože jim davaje možnost koristiti medžuslovjansky jako přehodny instrument brzejšego i udobnějšego učenja drugogo slovjanskogo jezyka. S medžuslovjanskym jezykom se takože može dvigati koristjenjem svojstev iz jezikov specifično narěčenoj grupy. Tuti procesy pridavanja vkusa sutnami nazyvane «flavorizacija».

Imajemo opyt, že govorci slovjanskyh jezikov strmjut svoje počutje medžuslovjanskogo kako davnověkovy dialekt svojego jezyka, ili kako susědny jezik blizko vezany k jih jezyku. Često sut ljudi udivjeni, kako mnogo mogut medžuslovjan-skomu razumići. Naša strategija jest iztvoriti tutoj pridavny jezik tako, že može byti prirodno priključeny do občiny govorimyh slovjanskyh jezikov, može popustiti medžuslovjansky dialog, přenesenje znanja i kultury bez potřeby přeloženja informacije do narodnyh jezikov.

It should be emphasized that Interslavic is not related to any religion, ideology or political movement. It is neither intended to ever replace any living language, nor to become a universal second language of any kind, but merely to serve as a tool for those who wish to communicate with other Slavs, and to those who hope to achieve a better understanding of the Slavic languages.

Tréba jest znamenati, že medžuslovjansky jezik ne jest vezany na nikaku religiju ili političko dviženje. Ni ne jest ustavjeny někogda izměniti někaky živy jezik, ni byti univerzalnym vtorym jezykom vših čred, no jemu jest toliko služiti priborom těm, ktori hočut komunikirati s drugymi Slovjanami, i těm, ktori nadějajut sobě dobytje lučšego razuměnja slovanskym jezykam.

## SLOVIANSKI

Slovianski consisted of elements that are most common in today's living Slavic languages. Grammar is basic, simple and regular. To maximize understandability to Slavic speakers, all words and forms are consistently based on majority solutions. Because Slovianski is a multi-purpose language, it is not a closed system with hard rules, but a flexible collection of Interslavic language instruments, including numerous word-building tools. The Slovianski project also encompasses Slovianto, a highly simplified experimental form of Interslavic, designed to have an even lower complexity level than Slovio, but using natural forms only.

## SLOVIANSKI

Slovianski držal elementy, iže sut najvyše zajedno v dnešnyh živyh slovanských jezycích. Grammatika jest osnovna, prosta i regularna. Radi maximalizacije razumivosti od slověnských govorcev, vse slova i formy sut konsistentno osnovane na majoritnom razrěšenji. Po pričině jezyka do mnogyh značenjej, on ne jest zaključena sistema s pevnymi zakonami, ale flexibilno sobiranje jezyčnyh priborov vklupě s mnogymi instrumentami strojenja slov. Projekt Slovianski takože obimaje Slovianto, vysoko oproščenu experimentalnu formu medžuslovjanskogo, narěčeno imati ješče menšu urovenj složnosti od Slovio no koristeče toliko prirodne formy.

## NEOSLAVONIC

Neoslavonic was an artificial evolution of the Old Church Slavonic language from the early Middle Ages into modern times. It can be regarded as the simplified grammar and vocabulary of all Slavic languages. Neoslavonic includes elements that are no longer universal in Slavic (multiple past and future verb tenses, the dual, the present passive participle, ...). This somewhat greater complexity has the advantage that it contributes to a greater passive (e.g. receptive) understanding of the local languages. Even so, Neoslavonic grammar is not very complicated at all; a basic overview fits on two pages.

## NOVOSLOVJANSKY

Novoslovjansky byl umětno razvity staroslovjansky jezik iz skorogo srđnogo věka do modernogo vrěmene. Na novoslovjansky jezik se može nazirati kako na oprostjenu grammatiku i slovnik vših slovanských jezycikov. Novoslovjansky obimaje elementy, iže ne sut vyše univerzalne (bolše čisel prošloga i budučega vrěmene glagolov, dvojina, sučny pasivny participij, ...). Tuta malo vyšejša složnost imaje přednost v tom, že prinašivaje lučše pasivno (to jest receptivno) razuměnje lokalnym jezykam. Obače tomu, grammatika novoslovjanskogog jezyka ne jest mnogo komplikovana; osnovny prěgled jest položeny na dvoх stranicah.

## COOPERATION

Practically, differences between Slovianski and Neoslavonic are minimal. Slovianski is based on the commonalities of the living Slavic languages, but to ensure consistency, we never borrow straight from any living Slavic language but reconstruct protoforms and take those as a starting point instead. On the other hand, Neoslavonic is Old Church Slavonic modernized through the prism of the modern languages. Not surprisingly, the results are often identical. Words, forms and conventions from one dialect can be very easily used in the other and vice versa, to the point that nobody can tell the difference anymore. This is proven by many columns written in our Internet news and the Internet discussions within our community.

Both projects cooperate very closely. Our project members write and read in both language forms, have their discussions on the same Internet forums, share the same dictionary, the same Internet newspaper, as well as several other places. Moreover, we have chosen the name INTERSLAVIC as a common denominator for both our projects. We expect that our two approaches will continue to inspire and enrich each other in the future, but in the meantime, we thoroughly enjoy our cooperation: the fruit of mutual appreciation of each other's work, respect for different points of view, overcoming personal ambitions, constructive criticism and most of all, the belief that our common goal is best served if we work together.

## DISCLAIMER

Despite our differences, we do appreciate the pioneering work of Mr. Hučko and we still consider Slovio a part of the Interslavic family. Sadly, Mr. Hučko considers himself to be an exclusive owner of the entire concept of Interslavic. He consistently refers other Interslavic projects as

## KOOPERACIJA

Praktično, razlišenja medžu Slovianskym i Novoslovjanskym sut minimalne. Sloviansky jest osnovano na zajednostjah živih slovjanskih jezykov, ali po pričině utvrđenja konzistencije, my nikogda ne beremo prosto iz živogo slovjanskog jezyka, no rekonstrujemo iz njih protoformy, od njihže načinajemo. Iz vtoroj točky zrěnja, novoslovjansky jezyk jest staroslovjansky modernizirany črěz prizmu modernyh jezykov. Ne udivuje, že razrěšenje jest često identično. Slova, formy i konvencije iz jednoga dialekta mogut byti udobno korišćene v vtorom i povratno do takoj točki, že nikto nemože kazati někako razlišenje. Tuto jest potvrđeno mnogymi člankami napisanymi do naših internetovyh novin i internetovymi diskusijami izmedžu našeju komunitoju.

Oba dva dialekta mnogo blizko kooperujut. Členi našego projekta pišut i čitajut v obojih jezyčnyh formah, besedujut na rovnyh internetovyh forah i zajedno imajut rovny slovnik, pravopis, internetove noviny i několiko drugyh prostorov. Navyše, my jesmo sobě izbrali priložno ime MEDŽUSLOVJANSKY kako obče nazvanje za oba dva dialekta. Čajemo, že naše dva pristupy jedin drugomu prodolžajut inspiraciju i obogačenje do budućega, i v tu tom vrěmeni gluboko uživajemo našu kooperaciju: plody iz ocenivanja raboty jednoga od drugoga, respektovanje različnyh toček zrěnja, premoženje ličnoj ambičnosti, konstruktivnu kritiku i najbolje věrovanje, že našemu jedinakomu narěčenji služimo najlučše, ako li rabačajemo zajedno.

## ODMĚTANJE

Nebrežno od našego razlišenja my pravdivo ocenivajemo pioneersku rabotu gospodina Hučka i navěk pomnimo Slovio do Medžuslovjanskoy občiny. Na žalost, gospodin Hučko sebe polagaje exkluzivnym držiteljem vsego medžuslovjanskog koncepta. Druge projekty sut jim prisno nazvajeme kako

"plagiarized Slovio clones" or "useless copycut languages".

We want to stress that our projects do not use Slovio material. Any coincidences are the logical result of both projects being based on the same Slavic source material. It is our belief that no one has the moral right to call himself the owner of Slavic vocabulary, and that the Interslavic language should never be used as a vehicle for anybody's personal ambitions or financial gains.

## CONCLUSION

Our Interslavic team is perfectly aware of the fact that we are only in the beginning, and that there is still a lot of work ahead of us. We need to practice, produce more texts and other materials, and we always need more feedback from others. We, as the collaborative creators, do what we think is best, but we know very well that we cannot always take the right decision. Spoken languages are living things and we know that no conlang (Esperanto, Interlingua) or reconstructed modern national language (Slovak, Hebrew, Indonesian) in the world is used in the exactly same form as when it was first published. Therefore we welcome anybody – linguist, non-linguist, native speaker, non-native speaker – to join our ranks and work with us on this great task!

**THE INTERSLAVIC COMMUNITY**, September 2011 (*editorially shortened*)

---

«plagirane klony od Slovio» ili «nepotrebne copycut jezyky».

Hočemo podčrtati, že naše projekty ne koristet material iz Slovio. Vse sorečnosti sut samo logičny rezultat našego projekta i projekta Slovio po pričině osnovanija na rovnyh slovjanskyh iztočnikah. Po našem věrovanji nikto ne imaje moralno pravo byti imajućim slovjanskogo slovnika, i medžuslovjanskemu jezyku ne jest možno nikogda byti koriščeny kako kolesnica ličnoj ambicije ili finančnog prinosa.

## ZAKLJUČENJE

Naš medžuslovjansky team odlično znaje fakt, že jesmo toliko na počatku, i jest před nami ješče mnogo raboty. Jest nam trěba praktizirati, strojiti bolše texta i drugogo materiala, i vsegda jest trěba nam dostavati povratny vez od drugih. My, kolaborativni tvorci, dělajemo najbolše, čto myslimo, no mnogo dobro znajemo, že vsegda ne možemo prijati pravo razrěšenje. Govorime jezyky sut žive věči, i znajemo, že nijedin konstruirany jezyk (Esperanto, Interlingua) ili rekonstruirany moderny narodny jezyk (slovačsky, jevrejsky, indonezijsky) světa ne jest dnes koristimy v točno rovnoj formě, kako kogda je izprva byl publikirany. Zato prizyvajemo vsekakogo - lingvista, nelingvista, rodimogo govorca, nerodimogo govorca - pričestiti se k našim činam i rabotati s nami na tutom velikom dělu!

## SUPPLEMENT

In July 2017, there was made a significant shift towards unity. The first international conference took place (see <http://cisla.slavic-union.org/>) and an international committee of the most active experts of both dialects was created. The result is 100% unification of orthography and basic grammar, so today we can talk about a common language. The remaining small differences are only a question of the personal taste of individual users as in any human language.



# 1. pronunciation and alphabet

## pronunciation

Unlike English, Interslavic words are pronounced in the same way as they are written. This is good news. It means that once you learn how to pronounce individual Interslavic characters, you will be able to read correctly any Interslavic text.

Stress is on the first syllable of short words. That syllable is only slightly emphasized, just like in the English words "table", "memory". Long words have the stress on the internal syllable where there are more consonants - just like in the English word "December".

However, Interslavic is an artificial language and therefore allows different kinds of stress. Polish speakers, for example, will tend to put the stress on the second to last syllable of a word; Czechs will tend to put stress always on the first syllable of a word.

## alphabet and orthography

Interslavic uses two equivalent alphabets: *Latin* and *Cyrillic*. In addition, it also has a transcript available in ASCII and Greek alphabets, and it is possible to use the first-ever Slavic script: *Glagolitic*.

In this book we will prefer the Latin alphabet with a brief outline of the transcription in Cyrillic. Do take notice that Interslavic uses the English version of the Latin alphabet supplemented by three diacritically marked consonants č, š, ž and one diacritically marked vowel ě. These four letters can be written using combinations of non-accented Latin letters as **cz**, **sz**, **zs** and **ie** (example: člověk = človiček = człowiek = a man). Polish characters Ć, Ś, Ż are also acceptable as č, š, ž.

When writing in Cyrillic, please be aware that this script is richer than Latin. The following table explains the biggest difference between Cyrillic and Latin, which is a two-ways Cyrillic transcript of the one Latin character **j**.

<i>two different roles of the Latin character j</i>	<i>Cyrillic</i>	<i>Latin</i>
<i>consonant softening (e.g. jer, soft sign)</i>	ь	j
<i>jotization before vowels (e.g. ja, je, ju, ji, jo) and semiconsonant [j] in all other cases</i>	ј	j

There are no other accented letters or other "non-English" characters except those four in Latin orthography of Interslavic. The Latin orthography is derived from the international standard ISO 9, the Russian state standard GOST, and the United Nations standard UN 1987 made by the United Nations Group of Experts on Geographical Names (UNGEGN). Interslavic letters can be found also in many Slavic languages (for example marked Latin letters č, š, ž are in Slovenian, Croatian, Bosnian, Czech, Slovak, ... and Cyrillic letters are almost the same in Church Slavonic, Russian, Bulgarian, Serbian and Ukrainian ...). For your information, this system of Latin character diacritics was introduced in the early 15<sup>th</sup> century by the Czech thinker, reformer and martyr Jan Hus.

Latin	Latin	Cyrillic	Greek	IPA	how to pronounce it	name
<b>a</b>	<b>a</b>	а	α	[ a ]	alphabet, but	a
<b>b</b>	<b>b</b>	б	μπ	[ b ]	beer, bird	be
<b>c</b>	<b>c</b>	ц	τσ	[ ts ]	cats	ce
<b>č</b>	<b>cz</b>	ч	τζ	[ tʃ ]	chimney, bench, Czech, China	če
<b>d</b>	<b>d</b>	д	δ	[ d ]	date, do, odd	de
<b>dj</b>	<b>dj</b>	дъ	δι	[ ɟ ]	duty	dje
<b>dž</b>	<b>dzs</b>	дж	δζχ	[ dʒ ]	juice, gymnastics	dže
<b>e</b>	<b>e</b>	е	ε	[ ε ]	bed, yes	e
<b>ě</b>	<b>ie</b>	е (ѣ)	ιε	[ ɿɛ ]	yes, bien (Spanish), piedra (Spanish)	jatj
<b>f</b>	<b>f</b>	ф	φ	[ f ]	photo, leaf	ef
<b>g</b>	<b>g</b>	г	γ	[ g ]	go, get	ge
<b>h</b>	<b>h</b>	х	χ	[ x ]	loch (Scottish), José (Spanish)	ha
<b>i</b>	<b>i</b>	и	η	[ i ]	city, see, meat	i
<b>j</b>	<b>j</b>	ј (и, љ)	ї	[ j ]	yes, you	je
<b>k</b>	<b>k</b>	к	κ	[ k ]	kill, skin	ka
<b>l</b>	<b>l</b>	л	λ	[ l ]	like, loop	el
<b>lj</b>	<b>lj</b>	ль	λι	[ ɿ ]	caballero (Spanish)	elj
<b>m</b>	<b>m</b>	м	μ	[ m ]	man, ham	em
<b>n</b>	<b>n</b>	н	ν	[ n ]	no, nose	en
<b>nj</b>	<b>nj</b>	њь	νι	[ n̩ ]	new, cognac, mañana (Spanish)	enj
<b>o</b>	<b>o</b>	о (ω)	ο (ω)	[ ɔ ]	law, talk, no (Spanish)	o
<b>p</b>	<b>p</b>	п	π	[ p ]	pen, spin	pe
<b>q</b>	<b>q</b>	қ	κ	[ k ]	kill, skin	kve
<b>r</b>	<b>r</b>	р	ρ	[ r ]	sombrero (Spanish)	er
<b>s</b>	<b>s</b>	с	σ	[ s ]	see, city, pass	es
<b>š</b>	<b>sz</b>	ш	σχ	[ ʃ ]	she, shame	eš
<b>šč</b>	<b>szcz</b>	щ (шч)	σχτ	[ ʃtʃ ]	š and č (two consonants)	šča
<b>t</b>	<b>t</b>	т	τ	[ t ]	to, motor	te
<b>th</b>	<b>th</b>	ѳ (ѳ)	θ	[ θ ]	thing, teeth	the
<b>tj</b>	<b>tj</b>	тъ	τι	[ c ]	Tuesday, opportunity	tje
<b>u</b>	<b>u</b>	у	ου	[ ʊ ]	put, good	u
<b>v</b>	<b>v</b>	в	β	[ v ]	voice, have	ve
<b>w</b>	<b>w</b>	в	β	[ v ]	voice, have	dvojne ve
<b>x</b>	<b>x</b>	кс (ξ)	ξ	[ ks ]	sex, six	eks
<b>y</b>	<b>y</b>	ы (v)	υ	[ i ]	city, see, meat	ypsilone
<b>z</b>	<b>z</b>	з	ζ	[ z ]	zoo, zombie, rose	zet
<b>ž</b>	<b>zs</b>	ж	ζχ	[ ʒ ]	pleasure, Jean (French)	žet
<b>j</b>	<b>j</b>	ь	ι		no sound, only softening sign	jer

Interslavic has one auxiliary symbol, which is actually a character without its own sound. It is the letter "ј" written after consonants in the Latin alphabet which is called a "**jer**" or a "**soft sign**". It has its own shape "ь" in the Cyrillic alphabet. This soft sign letter is used to represent a change in the pronunciation of an immediately preceding **consonant** (this sound change effect is called *palatalization* in linguistics) by which

the pronunciation of a consonant comes to be produced with the tongue in a position in the mouth near the palate.

examples: **dj=дъ, tj=тъ, nj=нъ, lj=лъ**

note:

1. There is no sound difference between characters **i** and **y** (as well as in modern Greek, for example). We use these two symbols of the same sound in order to express different grammatical information and to separate some homonyms only. In case of "**simplified orthography**", it is possible to write only one character **i**.
2. Letter **ě** is pronounced in the same way as standard **e** but softens the preceding consonants from **dě, tě, ně, lě** to **dj+e, tj+e, nj+e, lj+e**. In other cases this character is pronounced as jotized **e** (eg. two sounds **j+e**). This character is often written in Cyrillic (and simplified Latin as well) as the standard **e** only.
3. Letter combination **ch** can be used instead of simple **h** for the same sound [x] but is written only in international words in order to preserve original Greek/Latin orthography (**archiv, chorus, architektura**, for example).
4. In Cyrillic, it is allowed to use additional three two-sound characters **я, є, ю** as **j+a, ъ+a → я; j+e, ъ+e → є; j+y, ъ+y → ю**. For example: **imaju = имаю** or **konj, konja, konje, konju = конь, коня, коне, коню**.
5. Some Slavic languages (Slovak, Russian, ...) use vowels **e** and **i** for softening the preceding consonants in the same way as softening using **ě** and **ju**. Interslavic does not support softening using **e** and **i**, but only using **ě** and **ju**: For example, the combination of the letters **ne** is pronounced only as **n+e**, but not as **nj+e**, or the combination of the letters **ni** is pronounced only as **n+i**, but not as **nj+i**.
6. Interslavic has the syllabic **r**, which behaves in the same way as a vowel when forming syllables (the same situation is in Sanskrit, Croatian, Czech, Slovak, Slovenian, ...), but some modern national Slavic languages (Russian, Ukrainian, ...) lost this feature and therefore must combine **r** with standard vowels in order to create a normal syllable (**or**, for example). Syllabic **r** typically stands between more consonants (e.g. **p-r-st** = a finger, **sm-r-t** = death, ...).
7. Old Church Slavonic (and similarly modern Polish) has nasal vowels **ɛ=A=[æ^n]** and **u=X=[o^n]** plus their jotized versions **jɛ=IA=[jæ^n]** and **ju=IX=[jo^n]**. In accordance with the evolution of most Slavic languages, we do not use nasals. There is a simple application rule for this nasal replacement: **ɛ=A → e** and **u=X → u**. (e.g. **język → jezyk** = language, **budę → budu** = I will be)

However, Interslavic is an artificial and auxiliary language and therefore allows different kinds of pronunciation. It is not be a mistake, for example, if Russians or anyone else pronounces **e** and **i** softly everywhere.

## basic and advanced orthography

The reader may find (e.g. in a dictionary) more complicated orthography with other diacritical characters or letters reminiscent of the old Cyrillic. It is an etymological system that shows the ancient origin, but the modern pronunciation is the same as the same character without an additional diacritical mark. Users can use selected features of

it if it helps them. For example, Poles know to use nasals. Likewise, Czechs and Croats know **jatj** (ě), Czechs, Slovaks and Russians know to use **ypsilone**, etc.

<i>advanced orth.</i>	<i>basic orth.</i>	<i>explanation</i>	
å	ă	a	paleo-slavic *o
ę	ą	e	OCS nasal e
è	ь	e	OCS soft reduced vowel
ě	ъ	e	OCS jatj
ò	ъ	o	OCS hard red. wovel
ү	ж	u	OCS nasal u
у	ы	i	OCS hard i
ć	ћ	č	reduced paleo-slavic šč
ť	ть	t	paleo-slavic *t
đ	дъ	d	paleo-slavic *d

## soft pronunciation of consonants versus simplicity

The eastern (partly also western) Slavic languages are known for their softness and jotization. However this soft pronunciation can be a problem especially for southern Slavs and many non-Slavic people. Therefore, the Interslavic phonology design keeps following simplistic principle:

1. Soft consonants should continue by a consecutive vowel in order to facilitate easier pronunciation.  
(e.g. **nedělja** = Sunday, **poneděljok** = Monday)
2. If a word terminates with a consonant without any consecutive vowel, only **nj** and **lj** is obligatory but other two soft consonants **d'** (**dj**), **t'** (**tj**) are usually written and pronounced hardly as **d**, **t**.  
(e.g. **kost** = a bone, **radost** = joy, **učitelj** = a teacher, **konj** = a horse)

Of course, we acknowledge that the soft pronunciation (e.g. Eastern-Slavic accent) is also acceptable. These words have completely the same level of understandability regardless of whether they are pronounced in a soft or hard manner.  
(e.g. **kost/kost'** [kɔst / kɔsc] = a bone; **on jest/on jest'** [ɔn jɛst / ɔn jɛsc] = he is)

## palatalization

Slavic languages are known by their consonant softening in certain situations of word derivation, declension or conjugation. This process is called **palatalization**. Interslavic also observes this, but in a very limited way with only three regular rules for the soft consonants č, š, ž as follows:

k → č,

h → š,

g → ž.

examples:

**člověk** (a man *N*), **člověče!** (man! *V*);  
**prah** (a dust, *noun*), **prašny** (dust, *adj.*);  
**dolgy** (long, *adj.*), **dolžejši** (longer, *adj.*).

## euphony of verbs

In order to sound almost like an ordinary natural Slavic language, we need to improve certain artificially generated sound combinations caused by the application of grammatical endings to stems of *verbs* in order to create personal forms and participles:

- $\text{cj} \rightarrow \check{\text{c}}$        $\text{wj} \rightarrow \text{ч}$ ,
  - $\text{sj} \rightarrow \check{\text{s}}$        $\text{cj} \rightarrow \text{ш}$ ,
  - $\text{zj} \rightarrow \check{\text{z}}$        $\text{zj} \rightarrow \text{ж}$ ,
  - $\text{dj} \rightarrow \text{d}\check{\text{z}}$        $\text{dj} \rightarrow \text{дж}$ ,
  - $\text{tj} \rightarrow \check{\text{c}}$        $\text{tj} \rightarrow \text{ч}$ ,
  - $\text{stj} \rightarrow \check{\text{s}}\check{\text{c}}$        $\text{stj} \rightarrow \text{шч} \rightarrow \text{щ}$ .

examples:

<b>prositi / просити</b>	to please, <i>inf.</i>
<b>prošu→prošu / просю→прошу</b>	I please
<b>prosjenje→prošenje / просъене→прошенье</b>	pleasing, <i>verbal noun</i>
<b>videti, vidju→vidžu, vidjenje→vidženje</b>	to see, I see, seeing
<b>mogti, mogu, možeš, mogl</b>	may, I may, you may, he might
<b>pekti, peku, pečeš, pekl</b>	to bake, I bake, you bake, he baked

**losing vowels "e" and "o"**

As in Latin, Greek, Germanic and the Romanesque languages, there is a so-called losing vowel "e" in Interslavic word endings. The most frequent case of this losing vowel effect is in noun declension, where "e" is present only in the nominative.

## examples:

**pes** (a dog *N*), **psa** (a dog *G*),  
**sen** (a dream *N*), **sna** (a dream *G*),  
**otec** (a father *N*), **otca** (a father *G*),  
**članek** (an element *N*), **članka** (an element *G*),  
**December** (December *N*), **Decembra** (December *G*).

Although there is a preferred losing vowel "e" in general, because of the analogy with other European languages (e.g. Greek, Latin and their derivates), it is also possible to use a losing vowel "o" because it is common in Eastern Slavic languages, Polish and Slovak. This reflects the change of the original hard reduced vowel "ь" from the Old Slavic to the vowel "o" in these languages.

This "**o**" option applies only in case of replacement of the original Old Slavic (OS) hard reduced vowel "**ь**". Remember that the transformation of the soft reduced vowel "**ь**" must go always only to the losing "**e**".

examples:

**son** (a dream *N*), **sna** (a dream *G*), (based on the original OS **сънъ**)  
**članok** (an element *N*), **članka** (an element *G*). (based on the original OS **чланъкъ**)

but be careful on:

**otec** (a father *N*), **otca** (a father *G*), **отец** (based on the original OS **отъцъ**)

## 1<sup>st</sup> example

(You can hear these words using speech generator at <http://generator.interslavic-language.org>)

voda [ vɔda ] water  
hlěb [ xl̩eb ] bread  
auto [ autɔ ] a car, an automobile  
solnce [ sɔln̩se ] a sun  
člověk [ tʃl̩ovjek ] a man (human being)  
muž [ muʒ ] a man (masculine)  
žena [ ʒena ] a woman  
dětko [ jɛt̩ko ] a child  
imaju [ imajʊ ] I have  
imaješ [ imajɛʃ ] you have  
majemo [ imajemɔ ] we have  
veliky [ veliki ] big (sg. m. adj.)  
maly [ mali ] small (sg. m. adj.)  
doma [ dɔma ] at home (adv.)  
jedin [ jedin ] one (m.)  
dva [ dva ] two (m.)  
tri [ tri ] three  
četyri [ tʃet̩iri ] four  
pet [ pɛt ] five  
deset [ dɛsɛt ] ten  
sto [ stɔ ] hundred

## 2<sup>nd</sup> example

(You can hear these words using speech generator at <http://generator.neoslavonic.org>)

**Vsi ljudi sut rodženi svobodni i rovni v svojih dostenstvu i pravah.**  
**Вси люди сут роджени свободни и ровни в својих достојенству и правах.**  
[ vsi ljudi sut rodženi svobodni i rovni v svojih dostenstvu i pravax ]  
All human beings are born free and equal in dignity and rights.

**Oni sut obdarjeni razumom i svěstju,**  
**Они сут обдарјени разумом и свестю,**  
[ oni sut obdarjeni razumom i svěstju ]  
They are endowed with reason and conscience,

**i trěba jest jim postupati drug s drugom v duhu bratstva.**  
**и треба јест јим поступати друг с другом в духу братства.**  
[ i tr̩eba jest jim poštupati drug s drugom v duhu bratstva ]  
and should act towards one another in a spirit of brotherhood.

(article 1. of preamble of the universal declaration of human rights by the United Nations)

## 2. sentence structure, word order

In the Interslavic language (as well as in all Slavic languages), the **word order in a sentence is rather flexible**. In English, the position of words in sentences is necessary to inform whether it is a noun, adjective, verb, subject, object or something else. Neoslavonic words have their own endings (declension and conjugation), in which the complete information about their grammatical category is stored, so there is no need for any word to respect a specific position in the sentence. This system of endings is specific for the family of  **fusional** (or “inflecting”) languages. Fusional languages do not need to use position of words for expressing grammatical categories but use word position for another finer expression details, which are not as easily expressible in other languages.

Examples of other fusional Indo-European languages include Sanskrit (and many of the modern Indo-Aryan languages), Greek (both classical and modern), Latin, Lithuanian, Latvian and Albanian. Another notable group of fusional languages is the Semitic languages group (Hebrew, Arabic, Aramaic). A high degree of fusion is also found in many other languages in the world.

Though the Interslavic sentence is generally arranged "subject-verb-object" as in English, the grammatical rules allow the use of virtually any combination of subject, verb, object, ... in order to stress different components of the sentence.

Here we can observe the semantic rule: The most important information of a sentence should be contained in its first approximate **7 words**.

Of course this does not mean that Interslavic words can be mixed in any haphazard way. For example, if adjectives belong to a specific noun, they must be positioned either in front of or behind that corresponding noun, and other elements of the sentence cannot intervene between them. Metaphorically, an Interslavic sentence is like a branched tree – the branches representing particular sentence components. Mutually branches may have flexible order, but elements within each branch must not be mixed with elements of another branch.

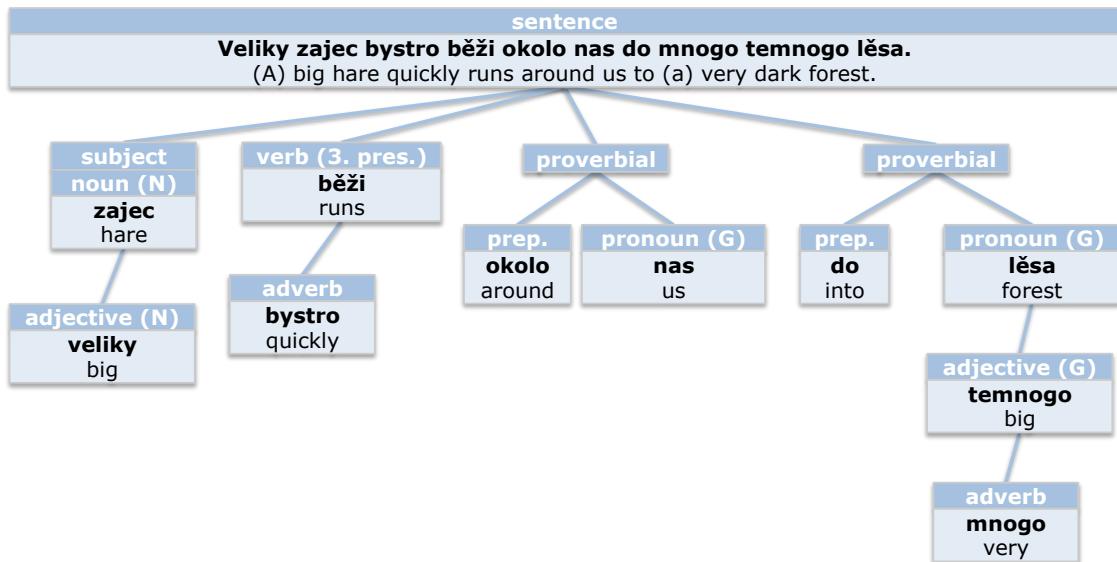
Basic sentence elements are:

1. **subject part.** This is a noun or conjunction of several **nouns** or **pronouns** or **numerals** in the nominative case,
  2. **verb part**, which is made up of at least one **verb** optionally extended by **adverbs**,
  3. **object part**, which is a noun or conjunction of several nouns in the accusative case or other cases without a preposition,
  4. **proverbial parts**, which are either made up by **adverbs** or **nouns** or **pronouns** or **numerals** in various cases with prepositions.
- Any **noun** or **pronoun** or **numeral** at any position can be extended by additional **adjectives** or **pronouns** or **numerals** or **attributes**,
  - any **adjective** can be extended by additional adjectives or adverbs, and
  - any **adverb** can be extended by additional adverbs.

## 1<sup>st</sup> example

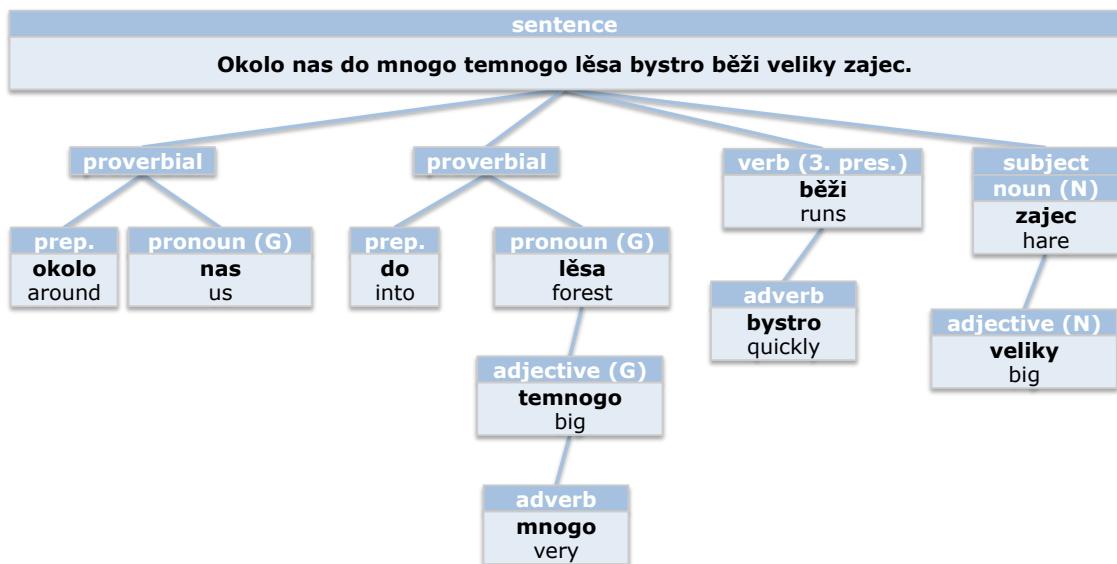
**Veliky zajec běstro běži okolo nas do mnogo temnogo lěsa.**  
*A big hare quickly runs around us to a very dark forest.*

A standard sentence with the English-like word order:

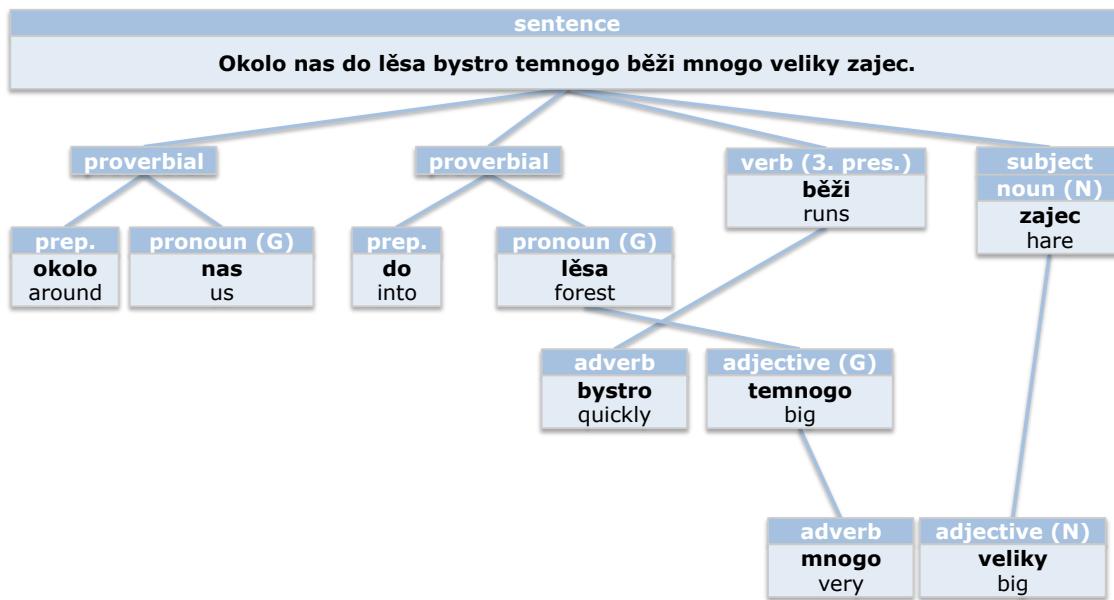


There could be a different word order, where "a big hare" is less important than the information about our experience (something is running around us, something is running to a dark forest). This new sentence has the same syntactical tree as the previous example. The only difference is in the order of branches of these syntactical trees. This cannot be easily expressed in English:

**Okolo nas do mnogo temnogo lěsa běstro běži veliky zajec.**



This is an example of an incorrect sentence, where words have been impermissibly mixed between two branches (as it resembles the chaotic language of master Yoda from StarWars Episodes):

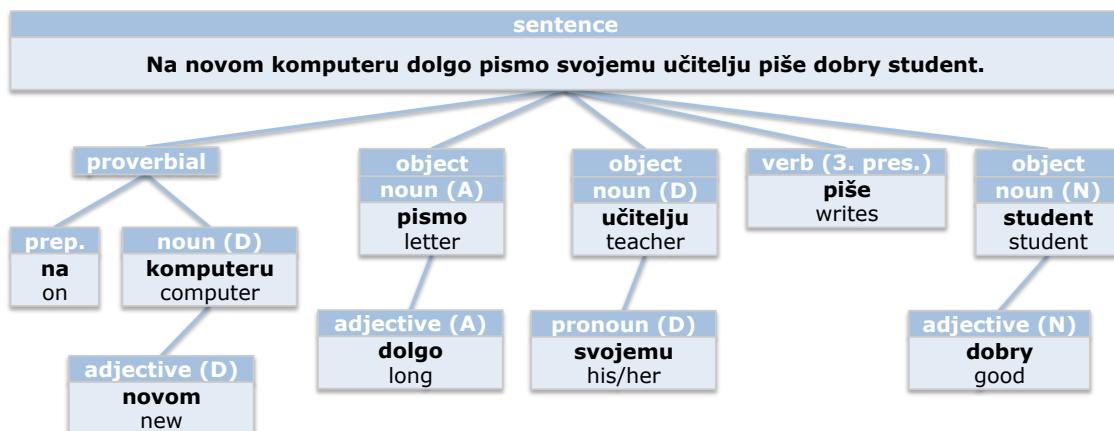


## 2<sup>nd</sup> example

**Dobry student piše svojemu učitelju dolgo pismo na novom komputeru.**  
*A good student writes his/her teacher a long letter on a new computer.*

If we will want to stress 1) "a new computer" and 2) "size of a letter" and then later speak about the writing process and its details (a student, a teacher), we can reorder the sentence as follows (note that in this case, the arrangement of all five tree branches is completely reversed from the English order):

**Na novom komputeru dolgo pismo svojemu učitelju piše dobrý student.**



## appendix

People educated in applied mathematics know that these branched trees can also be displayed as plain texts using special brackets. (Davis & Weyuker, 1983) Elements within each brackets can change their order, but the content inside some pair brackets can not be mixed with the content of another pair of brackets:

**{{veliky zajec} {bystro běží} {okolo nas} {do mnogo temnogo lěsa}}**

**{{okolo nas} {do mnogo temnogo lěsa} {bystro běží} {veliky zajec}}**

**{{dobry student} {piše} {svojemu učitelju} {dolgo pismo} {na novom komputeru}}**

**{{na novom komputeru} {dolgo pismo} {svojemu učitelju} {piše} {dobry student}}**

or in more detail as

{clause      {subj. **veliky zajec**}  
              {v. **bystro běží**}  
              {prov. **okolo nas**}  
              {prov. **do mnogo temnogo lěsa**}}

{clause      {prov. **okolo nas**}  
              {prov. **do mnogo temnogo lěsa**}  
              {v. **bystro běží**}  
              {subj. **veliky zajec**}}

{clause      {subj. **dobry student**}  
              {v. **piše**}  
              {obj. **D svojemu učitelju**}  
              {obj. **A dolgo pismo**}  
              {prov. **na novom komputeru**}}

{clause      {prov. **na novom komputeru**}  
              {obj. **A dolgo pismo**}  
              {obj. **D svojemu učitelju**}  
              {v. **piše**}  
              {subj. **dobry student**}}

We can say that English needs to use the fixed position of words in sentences to inform readers about whether these words are subjects, objects, verbs or something else. It is obvious that Slavic languages (as well as Latin and Greek and yet more languages) operate with words containing more unambiguous grammatical information without the need to use fixed positions in sentences. Free word order can then be used to express the finer details of communication in these languages.

### 3. definite and indefinite articles

In the Neoslavonic language (as well as in all Slavic languages, Latin and Greek, for example) there is **no indefinite article** (a, an). In normal situations, we speak without an indefinite article. In special cases, when we strongly need to express our unfamiliarity to an object, it is possible to use the standard numeral "one" (*m.* **jedin**, *f.* **jedna**, *n.* **jed-no**) or the indefinite pronoun "some, any" (*m.* **někaky**, *f.* **někaka**, *n.* **někake**).

In limited circumstances, the English definite article "*the*" can be translated in Interslavic by using the demonstrative pronouns *m.* **toj**, *f.* **ta**, *n.* **to** and *pl.* **ti**. This demonstrative pronoun declines in 7 cases and 3 numbers, as you will see later in chapter 7. However, please note that **these Interslavic definite articles are used only in clauses where one is referring to something already "existing" or "referred to" in a previous clause** (in this sense, they are similar to the English pronouns "this, that, these & those"). In all other situations except Bulgarian and Slavo-Macedonian, the definite article is not used at all.

The demonstrative pronoun *m.* **toj**, *f.* **ta**, *n.* **to** can be supplemented by more detail as:

- *m.* **tutoj**, *f.* **tuta**, *n.* **tuto** (this here)
- *m.* **tamtoj**, *f.* **tamta**, *n.* **tamto** (that there)

examples:

(dialogue between two persons)

A: **Moj brat imaje veliky dom.**

A: My brother has (3 sg.) (a) big house. (**dom** = a house, **moj brat** = my brother)

B: **Kako stary je toj dom?**

B: How old is that house? (**toj dom** = the house, that house)

(dialogue between two persons)

A: **Tu jest dom mojego brata.**

A: Here is (a) house of my brother. (**dom** = a house, **mojego brata** = of my brother)

B: **Kako stary je toj/tutoj dom?**

B: How old is this house? (**tutoj dom** = this house here)

## Bulgarian and Slavo-Macedonian exception

Bulgarian and Slavo-Macedonian are exceptions to the absence of a distinctive "definite article" among the natural Slavic languages. They both use their definite article in (almost) the same way as in English - with one big difference: it is spoken *after* the noun - moreover, it is written together with the noun: "a woman" = **žena**, "the woman" = **ženata**. Interestingly, it should be noted that both the Bulgarian and Slavo-Macedonian languages, unlike all the other natural Slavic languages, have "lost" their original noun declension system - as in English - and, like English, they have replaced this structure through the use of "prepositions" and the "definite article".

Of further note in this regard is that the Bulgarian and Slavo-Macedonian "definite article" structure is very similar to the word order used in archaic Slavic: *noun-article-adjective* versus the modern Slavic word order: *article-adjective-noun*. (e.g. modern **ta dobra žena** = the/this good women, versus Old Church Slavonic: **žena ta dobra** and modern Bulgarian: **ženata dobra**). Even here an exception exists in the Polish language, where word order is far more flexible than in the other modern Slavic languages.

Moreover, for appendix purposes, we note that the Southern Slavic languages and Czech have yet another special way to convey a sense of the "definite" and "indefinite" in speech, through the existence of *definite and indefinite adjectives*, which is manifested by different suffix forms derived from Old Church Slavonic formations. This is *not* incorporated into Interslavic.

## 4. nouns, cases, prepositions

Note that there are three important grammatical categories that determine the composition of Interslavic nouns (and also pronouns, adjectives and numerals): **case**, **number**, and **gender**.

### number

Number is **singular** and **plural**. Interslavic has the optional **dual** as well, which is like a special form of plural for exactly two objects. Dual is fully used only in Slovene and Sorbian, but its residue is in almost all Slavic languages. In this book we will not use the dual because it is not absolutely needed for basic communication. We will address it only with respect to paired body parts (e.g. eyes, ears).

Unfortunately there is no simple rule to form the plural from the singular-like "-s" ending in English and Spanish. As in Latin and Greek, each grammatical pattern has its own specific plural endings. You have to learn them together with the case endings.

### gender

There are three genders: *masculine*, *feminine* and *neuter*. Unlike English, these three genders are assigned to all words.

- Of course, if a living being is visibly masculine (e.g. **žrebec** = *a stallion*, **byk** = *a bull*, ...), it is grammatically masculine as well. The same goes for feminine. Neuter are all cubs of animals (e.g. **tele** = *a calf*).
- If a living (animate) being does not clearly have the distinguishable male or female sex, its grammatical gender can be any of these three. For example **ryba** = *a fish* is feminine, **pes** = *a dog* is masculine, **životno** = "*an animal*" is neuter.
- Also inanimate things may have masculine or feminine gender. For example, **nož** = *a knife* is masculine, **voda** = *water* is feminine, **mléko** = *milk* is neuter.

For this reason, grammatical gender of words must be given in the dictionary. Generally, the majority of feminine words are ending in **-a**, neuter words ending in **-o** or **-e**, and masculine words ending in a consonant, but a beginner can not rely absolutely upon this.

### cases

Interslavic has 7 grammatical cases. (modern Greek and German has 4, ancient Greek has 5, Latin has 6, Sanskrit has 8, ...) Interslavic cases are:

- *N nominative*
- *A accusative*
- *G genitive*
- *L locative*
- *D dative*
- *I instrumental*
- *V vocative*

Remember that the *nominative* and *vocative* can never be combined with prepositions. Other cases (*genitive*, *dative*, *accusative*, *locative* and *instrumental*) are used with prepositions, but may also be used without them.

## **nominative case**

The nominative case answers the questions **kto, čto?** = who, what? The Interslavic nominative is the very basic form of any word found in dictionaries. The nominative case is used for the *subject* of the sentence.

We must point out that in some Slavic sentences the subject in the nominative case is hidden. This is when the subject of a sentence is a personal pronoun in English. In English, we need to use the pronoun in order to express the personal form of the verb; however, Slavic verbs themselves carry this information using the personal postfixes.

example:

**Čitaju** = (I) read. **Čitaje** = (he) reads. **Čitajemo** = (we) read. **Čitajut** = (they) read. ...

## **accusative case**

The accusative case designates *the object* of some action.

example:

**Pišu pismo** = (I) write (a) letter. **Vidim ženu.** = (I can) see (a) woman.

## **genitive case**

The genitive case refers to things (or living beings) belonging to other things (or living beings). Just like when you use "of" or the possessive "-'s" in English.

example:

**Kniga mojego brata.** = A book of my brother. (Or my brother's book.)

## **locative case**

Nouns take the locative case when their existence is used to refer to an object, place or time associated with some action we speak about. It corresponds vaguely to the English prepositions "in", "on", "at", "about". In an ordinary conversation the locative case is always used with some necessary preposition.

example:

**v zimě** = in Winter, **na vrhu** = on (the) hill, on the (top) ...

**Pišu pismo o našem autu.** = (I) write (a) letter about our car.

## **dative case**

The dative case is a grammatical case generally used to indicate the noun to which something is given, as in "John gave Mary a drink". In general, the dative marks the indirect object of a verb.

example:

**Pišu pismo svojemu prijatelju.** = (I) write (a) letter (to) my friend.

or (I) write my friend (a) letter.

## instrumental case

In general the Slavic instrumental case is used to indicate how something is done or the means by which an action is carried out. In English it is usually expressed by the prepositions "by, with, using", but in Neoslavonic it does not need prepositions but the instrumental case.

example:

Q: **Kako jesи došel k nam?** = How did (you) come to us?

A: **Autom.** = Using a car.

## vocative case

The vocative is used only for calling/addressing someone or something. The vocative is very similar to the nominative. It is the only case where palatalization of consonants may occur due to the added vocative ending. Remember still the same palatalization **g→ž, h→š, k→č**. Moreover, the vocative of some traditional words can be irregular.

example:

**žena** = a woman *N*, **ženo!** = woman! *V*,

**Bog** = the God *N*, **Bože!** = Thou God!, Oh God! *V*,

**gospod** = Sir *N*, **gospodi!** = Sir! *V* (irregular).

## animate and inanimate masculine patterns

All masculine patterns have the accusative (*A*) either identical to the genitive (*G*) or with the nominative (*N*). These two different kinds of masculine declension are called *animate declension* and *inanimate declension*. The *animate declension* (*A=G*) is intended only for those nouns who represent living beings or other subjects able to perform some actions (e.g. robots and similar machines, ...). Here the accusative must be different from the nominative in order to make clear who is a performer of an action and who is a target of an action. The *inanimate declension* (*A=N*), has the accusative identical to the nominative as in all neuter patterns.

Example 1: **Petr slyší Ivana.** (Peter is listening to Ivan) The accusative of **Ivan** is animate and therefore identical to the genitive, because both **Petr** and **Ivan** are able to listen to somebody. Thus, here we need to make clear "who" is listening to "whom."

Example 2: **Petr stroji dom.** (Peter makes/builds a house) The accusative of **dom** (a house) is inanimate and therefore identical to the nominative of **dom**, because a house is not able to make/build somebody. In this sentence, it is clearly obvious who is the builder and what is built.

Remember that there is an easy tool to distinguish animate and inanimate subjects in Interslavic: We ask of animate subjects by using **kto?** (who?), but we ask of inanimate subjects by using **čto?** (what?). Here you can see that even English distinguishes animate and inanimate subjects in the same way as Interslavic.

Look at these hard and soft declension masculine patterns. Only inanimate patterns have identical nominative and accusative.

*declension of the hard animate masculine pattern **brat** (a brother) and  
the soft animate masculine pattern **muž** (a man)*

	<i>sg.</i>	<i>pl.</i>		<i>sg.</i>	<i>pl.</i>
<i>N</i>	<b>brat</b>	<b>brat-i</b>		<b>muž</b>	<b>muž-i</b>
<i>A</i>	<b>brat-a</b>	<b>brat-ov</b>		<b>muž-a</b>	<b>muž-ev</b>
<i>G</i>	<b>brat-a</b>	<b>brat-ov</b>		<b>muž-a</b>	<b>muž-ev</b>
<i>L</i>	<b>brat-u</b>	<b>brat-ah</b>		<b>muž-u</b>	<b>muž-ah</b>
<i>D</i>	<b>brat-u</b>	<b>brat-am</b>		<b>muž-u</b>	<b>muž-am</b>
<i>I</i>	<b>brat-om</b>	<b>brat-ami</b>		<b>muž-em</b>	<b>muž-ami</b>
<i>V</i>	<b>brat-e!</b>	<b>brat-i!</b>		<b>muž-u!</b>	<b>muž-i!</b>

*declension of the hard inanimate masculine pattern **grad** (a town, a city) and  
the soft inanimate masculine pattern **kraj** (a knife)*

	<i>sg.</i>	<i>pl.</i>		<i>sg.</i>	<i>pl.</i>
<i>N</i>	<b>grad</b>	<b>grad-y</b>		<b>nož</b>	<b>nož-e</b>
<i>A</i>	<b>grad</b>	<b>grad-y</b>		<b>nož</b>	<b>nož-e</b>
<i>G</i>	<b>grad-a</b>	<b>grad-ov</b>		<b>nož-a</b>	<b>nož-ev</b>
<i>L</i>	<b>grad-u</b>	<b>grad-ah</b>		<b>nož-u</b>	<b>nož-ah</b>
<i>D</i>	<b>grad-u</b>	<b>grad-am</b>		<b>nož-u</b>	<b>nož-am</b>
<i>I</i>	<b>grad-om</b>	<b>grad-ami</b>		<b>nož-em</b>	<b>nož-ami</b>
<i>V</i>	<b>grad-e!</b>	<b>grad-y!</b>		<b>nož-u!</b>	<b>nož-e!</b>

## feminine patterns

Feminine gender does not have the concept of animation, but its nominative and accusative are different only in singular. It has only two regular patterns (hard and soft).

*declension of the hard feminine pattern **žena** (a woman) and  
the soft feminine pattern **duša** (a soul)*

	<i>sg.</i>	<i>pl.</i>		<i>sg.</i>	<i>pl.</i>
<i>N</i>	<b>žen-a</b>	<b>žen-y</b>		<b>duš-a</b>	<b>duš-e</b>
<i>A</i>	<b>žen-u</b>	<b>žen-y</b>		<b>duš-u</b>	<b>duš-e</b>
<i>G</i>	<b>žen-y</b>	<b>žen-</b>		<b>duš-e</b>	<b>duš-(ej)</b>
<i>L</i>	<b>žen-ě</b>	<b>žen-ah</b>		<b>duš-i</b>	<b>duš-ah</b>
<i>D</i>	<b>žen-ě</b>	<b>žen-am</b>		<b>duš-i</b>	<b>duš-am</b>
<i>I</i>	<b>žen-oju</b>	<b>žen-ami</b>		<b>duš-eju</b>	<b>duš-ami</b>
<i>V</i>	<b>žen-o!</b>	<b>žen-y!</b>		<b>duš-e! (o!)</b>	<b>duš-e!</b>

## neuter patterns

Neuter patterns do not contain the concept of animation (e.g. different nominative and accusative). There are only two regular patterns (hard and soft) of the neuter gender.

Neuter patterns can be regarded as a combination of masculine and feminine features:

*declension of the hard neuter pattern **sělo** (a village) and soft neuter pattern **polje** (a field)*

	<i>sg.</i>	<i>pl.</i>		<i>sg.</i>	<i>pl.</i>
<i>N</i>	<b>sěl-o</b>	<b>sěl-a</b>		<b>polj-e</b>	<b>polj-a</b>
<i>A</i>	<b>sěl-o</b>	<b>sěl-a</b>		<b>polj-e</b>	<b>polj-a</b>
<i>G</i>	<b>sěl-a</b>	<b>sěl-</b>		<b>polj-a</b>	<b>polj-(ej)</b>
<i>L</i>	<b>sěl-u</b>	<b>sěl-ah</b>		<b>polj-u</b>	<b>polj-ah</b>
<i>D</i>	<b>sěl-u</b>	<b>sěl-am</b>		<b>polj-u</b>	<b>polj-am</b>
<i>I</i>	<b>sěl-om</b>	<b>sěl-ami</b>		<b>polj-em</b>	<b>polj-ami</b>
<i>V</i>	<b>sěl-o!</b>	<b>sěl-a!</b>		<b>polj-e!</b>	<b>polj-a!</b>

## special feminine pattern **kost** (a bone) and dual number

The majority of Slavic languages still use the remnants of the dual case number for human body parts.

Please remember that **oko** *n.* (an eye), **oči** (two eyes), **oka** (eyes) and **oho** *n.* (an ear), **uši** (two ears), **uha** (many ears) have their singular and plural according to the standard neuter pattern **sělo**, **sěla** (a village), but if we are talking about exactly one pair of eyes and ears of some living being, we need to use a palatalized dual, which is identical to the feminine plural of the special pattern **kost** (a bone). Note that **čj, šj, žj → č, ž, š**.

*declension of the dual by the neutral pattern **oko** and the feminine irregular pattern **kost***

	<i>sg.</i>	<i>dual</i>	<i>pl.</i>	<i>sg.</i>	<i>pl.</i>
<i>N</i>	<b>ok-o</b>	<b>oč-i</b>	<b>ok-a</b>	<b>kost</b>	<b>kost-i</b>
<i>A</i>	<b>ok-o</b>	<b>oč-i</b>	<b>ok-a</b>	<b>kost</b>	<b>kost-i</b>
<i>G</i>	<b>ok-a</b>	<b>oč-ij</b>	<b>ok-</b>	<b>kost-i</b>	<b>kost-ij</b>
<i>L</i>	<b>ok-u</b>	<b>oč-ah</b>	<b>ok-ah</b>	<b>kost-i</b>	<b>kost-ah</b>
<i>D</i>	<b>ok-u</b>	<b>oč-am</b>	<b>ok-am</b>	<b>kost-i</b>	<b>kost-am</b>
<i>I</i>	<b>ok-om</b>	<b>oč-ami</b>	<b>ok-ami</b>	<b>kost-ju</b>	<b>kost-ami</b>
<i>V</i>	<b>ok-o!</b>	<b>oč-i!</b>	<b>ok-a!</b>	<b>kost-i!</b>	<b>kost-i!</b>

example: **Moje oči N.** My (two) eyes, **oči** as consistent with the pattern **kost** in the plural, **Sto ok G.** Hundred eyes, **ok** as consistent with the pattern for **sělo** in the plural.

note: The pattern for **kost** in the plural is also used for many feminine words ending with a consonant (**myš, myši, myšij, myšam ... a mouse**, for example) and the plural of more words like **ljudi, ljudij, ljudam ... (people)** and **děti, dětij, dětam ... (children)**.

## prepositions

Prepositions stand before nouns, pronouns and numerals. They help to create and modify relationships between clause elements in the same way as in English. A preposition itself is not a clause member; it becomes one only in conjunction with the appropriate expression. Prepositions create **adverbial parts of sentences** that carry the information about "when?", "where?", "how?" or "why?". Please learn them together with prepositions:

<b>kogda?</b>	when?
<b>kako?</b>	how?
<b>začto?</b>	why?
<b>kde?</b>	where? (an existing position of something/somebody)
<b>kamo?</b>	where? (a new desired position of something/somebody)
<b>kudu?</b>	where? (on the way to a new desired position)

Interslavic includes miscellaneous prepositions associated with the various cases except for the nominative and vocative. Some prepositions (**underlined**) are associated with more cases in order to clarify the precise meaning. For the basic conversation, it would be enough to know just these prepositions and their appropriate cases.

*nominative*                    *there are no prepositions*

<i>accusative:</i>	<b><u>nad</u></b>	above, over
	<b><u>pod</u></b>	below, under
	<b><u>prěd</u></b>	before, ahead of, in the face of
	<b><u>črěz</u></b>	through
	<b><u>v</u></b>	in, into, inside of
	<b><u>za</u></b>	after, behind, for, towards
	<b><u>na</u></b>	on, at, onto, upon
	<b><u>vně</u></b>	out of, outside of
	<b><u>medžu</u></b>	between, among
	<b><u>mimo</u></b>	beyond, outside, aside, except

<i>genitive:</i>	<b><u>bez</u></b>	without, except
	<b><u>iz</u></b>	from
	<b><u>do</u></b>	into, inside, to
	<b><u>od</u></b>	out from, by
	<b><u>u</u></b>	near to, at
	<b><u>kromě</u></b>	except
	<b><u>poslě</u></b>	after
	<b><u>vně</u></b>	out of, outside of
	<b><u>okolo</u></b>	around
	<b><u>radi</u></b>	due to, in order to, because

<i>locative:</i>	<b>o</b>	about, concerning
	<b>po</b>	after, upon, on
	<b>pri</b>	at, near to, by (where?)
	<b>v</b>	in, into, inside of
	<b>na</b>	on, at, onto, upon

<i>dative:</i>	<b>k</b>	to, at
	<b>protiv</b>	against
	<b>po</b>	in the way of

<i>instrumental:</i>	<b>s</b>	with, together with, by (how?)
	<b>nad</b>	above, over
	<b>pod</b>	below, under
	<b>prěd</b>	before, ahead of, in the face of
	<b>za</b>	after, behind
	<b>medžu</b>	between, among

*vocative:* *there are no prepositions*

Please remember that

1. accusative structures are always about the desired/wanted/expected space/time positions of something or somebody being actually somewhere else (e.g. answers to **kamo?** or **kudu?**) and
2. other structures (non-accusative) are always about the actually existing space/time position of something or somebody (e.g. answers to **kde?**).

example:

**Idu na veliku goru.** (**veliku goru** is the accusative of **velika gora** = a big hill.)  
(I) go to a big hill. (*I am not yet there, but I want to be there, I am moving there.*)

**Idu na velikoj gorě.** (**velikoj gorě** is the locative of **velika gora** = a big hill.)  
(I) am going/walking at a big hill. (*I am there, I am walking on the surface of a big hill.*)

## how to learn cases - declension symmetries

We know that this matter is most difficult for non-Slavic speakers. For this reason we have created a collection of simplified case patterns and introduced some auxiliary symmetries between these patterns. Please try to find them in the Neoslavonic grammar tables and learn them:

1. There are basically two fundamental patterns for each gender: **hard** and **soft**. The vowels "**o,ě**" from the hard patterns corresponds to the vowels "**e,i**" from the soft patterns. This means, for example, that you will find a variety of hard-soft pairs of endings of the same cases as **-om/-em**, **-oj/-ej**, **-ov/-ev**, **-uju/-eju**, ...
2. The *singular dative* and *singular locative* of the same pattern have the same endings.
3. The *singular dative* and *singular locative* of masculine hard and soft patterns and neuter hard and soft patterns have only one ending **-u**.
4. In all patterns of all genders, the *plural dative* has **-(j)am**, the plural locative has **-(j)ah** and the plural instrumental has **-(j)ami**.
5. The *plural genitive* (-) is identical for the feminine and the neuter patterns.
6. In the same *feminine* and *neuter pattern*, the singular genitive is identical to the plural nominative.
7. Look at colour tables at page 164 for detail of all declension symmetries.

## irregular declension patterns

Although Interslavic is an artificial language, it must be understood by Slavs without the need to learn it. This is why Interslavic must contain, at least partially, some popular but unfortunately irregular phenomena that exist in living Slavic languages.

1. There are *masculine words* (both *soft* and *hard*) which have a *feminine declension* pattern in the singular. These words end with **-a** in the nominative. Their plural, however, follows the regular masculine patterns, thus this exception is applicable to the singular only and is usually noted in dictionaries.

example: **vladyka** (a ruler, a governor) is masculine, but his singular cases are identical to the feminine pattern **žena** (a woman).

2. There are yet four more irregular patterns, which in their case endings add extra consonants. They are called *N-patterns*, *R-patterns* and *T-patterns* accordingly on the consonant to be added. This irregularity is also typical for classical European languages. Remember the example of the Greek word *drama* with its derivatives *drama-ti-cal* or *pragma*, *pragma-ti-cal*, ... As in the previous point, these words have special inflections only in their singular, while their plural and dual are regular soft patterns. In order to make this challenge easier, there is a strong symmetry of endings among these four patterns:

*irregular declensions in singular number*

	<i>-N- (m)</i>	<i>-N- (n)</i>	<i>-R- (f)</i>	<i>-T- (n)</i>
<i>N</i>	<b>den</b>	<b>ime</b>	<b>mati</b>	<b>děte</b>
<i>A</i>	<b>den</b>	<b>ime</b>	<b>mati</b>	<b>děte</b>
<i>G</i>	<b>dn-e</b>	<b>im-ene</b>	<b>mat-ere</b>	<b>dět-ete</b>
<i>L</i>	<b>dn-i</b>	<b>im-eni</b>	<b>mat-eri</b>	<b>dět-eti</b>
<i>D</i>	<b>dn-i</b>	<b>im-eni</b>	<b>mat-eri</b>	<b>dět-eti</b>
<i>I</i>	<b>dn-em</b>	<b>im-enem</b>	<b>mat-erju</b>	<b>dět-etem</b>
<i>V</i>	<b>dn-i!</b>	<b>ime!</b>	<b>mati!</b>	<b>děte!</b>

examples:

**děte** *N*, **dětete** *G*, **děteti** *D* (a child *n.*, *T-pattern*),  
plural: **děti** (regular soft plural pattern **kostí**);

**ime** *N*, **imene** *G*, **imeni** *D* (a name *n.*, *N-pattern*),  
plural: **imena** (regular soft plural pattern **polja**);

**tele** *N*, **telete** *G*, **teleti** *D* (a calf *n.*, *T-pattern*),  
plural **teleta** (regular soft plural pattern **polje**);

**doci** *N*, **docere** *G*, **doceri** *D* (a daughter *f.*, *T-pattern*),  
plural **docere** (regular soft plural pattern **duše**).

## appendix

If you are familiar with other Indo-European languages having cases (e.g. Latin, Greek, German, ...), this information can help you, because Interslavic, together with the living Slavic languages, shares common Indo-European declension paradigms as follows:

1. All *neuter patterns* have identical the *nominative*, the *accusative* and the *vocative*.
2. *Masculine* and *neuter patterns* are similar and have many identical endings of the same cases. Neuter patterns can be regarded as the masculine patterns with some feminine properties (e.g. plural genitive).



## 5. verbs to be and to have

Please, learn carefully the present forms of the verb **byti, jesi, byl** = *to be* and the corresponding personal pronouns:

I am	(ja) <b>jesm</b>	we are (my) <b>jesmo</b>
you (thou) are	(ty) <b>jesi</b>	you are (vy) <b>jeste</b>
he, she, it is	(on, ona, ono) <b>jest</b> (or je)	they are (oni) <b>sut</b>

And the present forms of the verb **iměti, imaješ, iměl** = *to have*:

I have	(ja) <b>imaju</b>	we have (my) <b>imajemo</b>
you (thou) have	(ty) <b>imaješ</b>	you have (vy) <b>imajete</b>
he, she, it has	(on, ona, ono) <b>imaje</b>	they have (oni) <b>imajut</b>

### note

1. There is yet one personal pronoun for "I", **az**. This is an old pronoun from the Old (Church) Slavonic language still used in Slovenian (**jaz**), Bulgarian (**az**) and Slavo-Macedonian (**jas**). In Interslavic, we prefer to use **ja**, because it is used in the majority of modern Slavic languages.
2. There is yet a short form of "he, she, it is", **je** = **jest**. This shorter form is well suitable to use when we create a compound verb form (e.g. past tense or passive mode).
3. The western and southern Slavic languages do not use the personal pronoun with verbs. Complete information about the verbal persons themselves is contained in the verb endings. The personal pronoun is used for emphasis purpose only. For this reason, in normal situations, try to use verbs without personal pronouns.

example: **imajemo** = we have, **my imajemo** = we personally have.

4. Some modern languages have a slightly different verb: **imati**. In Interslavic, it is possible to use -ě- or -a- in all forms, as for example:

I have	(ja) <b>iměju</b>	we have (my) <b>imějemo</b>
you (thou) have	(ty) <b>iměješ</b>	you have (vy) <b>imějete</b>
he, she, it has	(on, ona, ono) <b>iměje</b>	they have (oni) <b>imějut</b>

## **cases with verbs to be and to have**

1. Equivalency or an "is-a" relationship of two subjects is expressed by **byti** + *nominative*.

example: **Pes jest životno.** (A) dog *N* is (an) animal *N*.  
**Moj prijatelj jest dobry.** My friend *N* is good *N*.

2. Employment or other kind of a status or property description is also expressed by **byti** + *nominative*.

example: **Moj prijatelj jest učitelj.** My friend *N* is (a) teacher *N*.

3. Ownership ("has-a" relationship) of something is expressed by **iměti** + *accusative*.

example: **Moj prijatelj imaje psa.** My friend *N* has (a) dog *A*.

4. Being of somebody (e.g. inverted "has-a") is expressed by **byti** + *genitive*.

example: **Tutoj pes jest mojego prijatelja.** This dog *N* is of my friend *G*.  
(i.e. This dog belongs to my friend.)

## **to be / to have complementarity**

Note that (as shown in statements 3. and 4.) the verb **byti** behaves as an inverted variant of the verb **iměti**.

For this reason (among others) the verb **iměti** does not have a passive version, because it can be easily expressed by the verb **byti**, and vice versa.

## 6. query sentences, yes and no, negation

Interrogative sentences in Interslavic are created in two ways (either one way or the other way, but not both):

1. The sentence contains an interrogative pronoun or an interrogative adverb or an interrogative numeral. The sentence typically starts with this interrogative word which begins with **k-/č-** consonant.
2. The sentence containing any verb in the indicative form directly followed by the particle **li**. The sentence typically starts with this verb.

Please, learn these interrogative pronouns, adverbs and numerals:

<b>kto?</b>	<i>pron.</i> who?
<b>čto?</b>	<i>pron.</i> what?
<b>ktory?</b>	<i>pron.</i> which?
<b>kaky?</b>	<i>pron.</i> which?, what kind of?
<b>koliko?</b>	<i>num.</i> how much?, how many?
<b>koliky?</b>	<i>num.</i> what?, what order?
<b>kogda?</b>	<i>adv.</i> when?
<b>kako?</b>	<i>adv.</i> how?
<b>začto?</b>	<i>adv.</i> why?
<b>kde?</b>	<i>adv.</i> where? (an existing position of something/somebody)
<b>kamo?</b>	<i>adv.</i> where? (a new desired position of something/somebody)
<b>kudu?</b>	<i>adv.</i> where? (on the way to a new position from an existing position)

examples (particle "li")

<b>Jesi li doma?</b>	Are you at home?
<b>Imate li knigu?</b>	Do you have a book?
<b>Jest li on veliky?</b>	Is he big?

examples (interrogative words without "li")

<b>Kto jest tvoj prijatelj?</b>	Who is your friend?
<b>Koliko imaješ knig?</b>	How many (of) books <i>G</i> do you have?
<b>Kde jest tvoj pes?</b>	Where is your dog?

## yes and no, negation

Please remember these particles: **da** = yes, **ne** = no. Moreover, negation of verbs is made by the same particle **ne** being written directly before its corresponding verb. The same word **ne-** is used as a negating prefix in pronouns, adjectives and adverbs.

<b>Jesi li doma?</b>	Are you at home?
<b>Da, jesm.</b>	Yes, I am.
<b>Ne, ne jesm.</b>	No, I am not.
<b>Ne imaješ li knigu?</b>	Do not you ( <i>sg.</i> ) have a book?
<b>Ne, imaju!</b>	No, I have it!
<b>On ne jest veliky.</b>	He is not big.
<b>Ne znaju, kde jest vaš pes.</b>	I do not know, where is your ( <i>pl.</i> ) dog.

In contrast to the English language, Interslavic, as well as all the Slavic languages, permits and uses double, even triple negatives in the same sentence, but only if these multiple negatives separately belong to independent syntactic tree branches described at page 40.

examples (*first negative is in the verb branch, second negative is in the object branch*):

<b>Ne imaju nijednu knigu.</b>	I do not have <i>no one</i> book. = I do not have any book.
<b>Ne imaju ničto do raboty.</b>	I do not have <i>nothing</i> to do. = I do not have anything to do.

## 7. pronouns

All pronouns inflect like nouns in three genders. Fortunately, there are only two declension patterns: soft (**-ego**, **-emu**, **-im** ...) and hard (**-ogo**, **-omu**, **-ym** ...) for all pronouns. The same pattern is also used in *adjectives*. Please locate these in our grammatical tables and learn them. The following information may be helpful:

1. Masculine endings in the accusative follow the same model of the animate (*accusative = genitive*) and inanimate (*accusative = nominative*) declension paradigm of nouns. (e.g. **togo** = accusative animate, **toj** = accusative inanimate of the pronoun **toj** = this)
2. Endings are divided into three genders only in the singular. Plural (and dual) are the same for all genders except the rule above about masculine accusative.
3. There are symmetries between soft and hard endings:
  - Vowel "o" in hard endings corresponds to the vowel "e" in soft endings (eg. **-om** ↔ **-em**).
  - Vowel "y" in hard endings corresponds to the vowel "i" in soft endings (eg. **-yh** ↔ **-ih**).

### personal pronouns

<i>nominative</i>	<b>ja</b>	I	<b>ty</b>	you	-	<b>my</b>	we	<b>vy</b>	you	
<i>accusative</i>	<b>mene</b>	me	<b>tebe</b>	you	<b>sebe</b>	*self	<b>nas</b>	us	<b>vas</b>	you
<i>genitive</i>	<b>mene</b>		<b>tebe</b>		<b>sebe</b>		<b>nas</b>		<b>vas</b>	
<i>locative</i>	<b>mně</b>		<b>tobě</b>		<b>sobě</b>		<b>nas</b>		<b>vas</b>	
<i>dative</i>	<b>mně</b>		<b>tobě</b>		<b>sobě</b>		<b>nam</b>		<b>vam</b>	
<i>instrumental</i>	<b>mnoju</b>		<b>toboju</b>		<b>soboju</b>		<b>nami</b>		<b>vami</b>	
<i>vocative</i>	-		<b>ty</b>		-	<b>my</b>		<b>vy</b>		

1. The pronoun **ty** (you) is used for singular, the pronoun **vy** (you) is used for plural or for politeness and courtesy to one person.
2. It is possible to optionally use short forms **mně** = **mi**, **tobě** = **ti**, **sobě** = **si**.
3. Pronoun **sebe**, **sobě**, **seboju** is referring the subject of the sentence. It is obvious, that this pronoun does not exist in the nominative.

example:

**Pišu sebe do knígy.**  
**Pišemo sebe do knígy.**

I write myself in a book.  
We write ourselves in a book.

## hard pattern - pronoun **toj, ta, to** = the

*This soft pronoun pattern is identical to the hard adjective pattern as page 66.*

	<i>m. anim.</i>	<i>m. inanim.</i>	<i>feminine</i>	<i>neuter</i>	<i>pl. m. anim.</i>	<i>pl. other</i>
<i>nominative</i>	<b>t-oj</b>		<b>t-a</b>	<b>t-o</b>	<b>t-i</b>	<b>t-e</b>
<i>accusative</i>	<b>t-ogo</b>	<b>t-oj</b>	<b>t-u</b>	<b>t-o</b>	<b>t-yh</b>	<b>t-e</b>
<i>genitive</i>		<b>t-ogo</b>	<b>t-oj</b>	<b>t-ogo</b>		<b>t-yh</b>
<i>locative</i>		<b>t-om</b>	<b>t-oj</b>	<b>t-om</b>		<b>t-yh</b>
<i>dative</i>		<b>t-omu</b>	<b>t-oj</b>	<b>t-omu</b>		<b>t-ym</b>
<i>instrumental</i>		<b>t-ym</b>	<b>t-aju</b>	<b>t-ym</b>		<b>t-ymi</b>
<i>vocative</i>	<b>t-oj</b>		<b>t-a</b>	<b>t-o</b>	<b>t-i</b>	<b>t-e</b>

Remember that this pronoun has popular derivatives **tutoj, tuta, tuto** = this (here), **tamtoj, tamta, tamto** = that (there).

## soft pattern - pronoun **vsej, vsa, vse** = everybody, everything

*This soft pronoun pattern is identical to the soft adjective pattern as page 66.*

	<i>m. anim.</i>	<i>m. inanim.</i>	<i>feminine</i>	<i>neuter</i>	<i>pl. m. anim.</i>	<i>pl. other</i>
<i>nominative</i>	<b>vs-ej</b>		<b>vs-a</b>	<b>vs-e</b>	<b>vs-i</b>	<b>vs-e</b>
<i>accusative</i>	<b>vs-ego</b>	<b>vs-ej</b>	<b>vs-u</b>	<b>vs-e</b>	<b>vs-ih</b>	<b>vs-e</b>
<i>genitive</i>		<b>vs-ego</b>	<b>vs-ej</b>	<b>vs-ego</b>		<b>vs-ih</b>
<i>locative</i>		<b>vs-em</b>	<b>vs-ej</b>	<b>vs-em</b>		<b>vs-ih</b>
<i>dative</i>		<b>vs-emu</b>	<b>vs-ej</b>	<b>vs-emu</b>		<b>vs-im</b>
<i>instrumental</i>		<b>vs-im</b>	<b>vs-aju</b>	<b>vs-im</b>		<b>vs-imi</b>
<i>vocative</i>	<b>vs-ej</b>		<b>vs-a</b>	<b>vs-e</b>	<b>vs-i</b>	<b>vs-e</b>

Some words use this pronoun: **vsej + mir** (world) = **vsejmir** (space, cosmos, universe).

## soft pattern - pronouns **on, ona, ono, oni** = he, she, it, they

*This soft pattern is identical to the soft adjective pattern as page 66.*

	<i>m. anim.</i>	<i>m. inanim.</i>	<i>feminine</i>	<i>neuter</i>	<i>pl. m. anim.</i>	<i>pl. other</i>
<i>nominative</i>	<b>on</b>		<b>ona</b>	<b>ono</b>	<b>on-i</b>	<b>on-e</b>
<i>accusative</i>	<b>(n)j-ego</b>	<b>(n)j-ej</b>	<b>(n)j-u</b>	<b>(n)j-e</b>	<b>(n)j-ih</b>	<b>(n)j-e</b>
<i>genitive</i>		<b>(n)j-ego</b>	<b>(n)j-ej</b>	<b>(n)j-ego</b>		<b>(n)j-ih</b>
<i>locative</i>		<b>(n)j-em</b>	<b>(n)j-ej</b>	<b>(n)j-em</b>		<b>(n)j-ih</b>
<i>dative</i>		<b>(n)j-emu</b>	<b>(n)j-ej</b>	<b>(n)j-emu</b>		<b>(n)j-im</b>
<i>instrumental</i>		<b>(n)j-im</b>	<b>(n)j-aju</b>	<b>(n)j-im</b>		<b>(n)j-imi</b>
<i>vocative</i>	-	-	-	-	-	-

1. If this pronoun is used with a preposition, there is a need to add **n-** at the beginning.

example:

**prodaj jemu** (*D*) = sell him, **idu k njemu** (*D*) = I go to him,  
**vidim ju** (*A*) = I see her, **tuto jest za nju** (*A*) = this is for her.

2. There is no need to add personal pronouns (**ja, ty, on, ona, ono, my, vy, oni**) to verbs. In English, we need to use a pronoun in order to express the personal form of the verb, but Slavic verbs themselves carry this information through the personal postfixes. This style is also known in many Romance languages.

example: **čitaju** = (I) read, **čitaje** = (he) reads, **čitajemo** = (we) read, **čitajut** = (they) read ...

## **possessive pronouns moj = my, tvoj = yours, naš = our, vaš = your**

These pronouns are used in all three genders and are inflected according to the soft pattern.

	<i>masculine</i>	<i>feminine</i>	<i>neuter</i>	<i>plural</i>
<i>nominative</i>	<b>moj</b>	<b>moj-a</b>	<b>moj-e</b>	<b>moj-i, moj-e</b>
<i>accusative</i>	<b>moj-ego, moj</b>	<b>moj-u</b>	<b>moj-e</b>	<b>moj-ih, moj-e</b>
<i>genitive</i>	<b>moj-ego</b>	<b>moj-ej</b>	<b>moj-ego</b>	<b>moj-ih</b>
<i>locative</i>	<b>moj-em</b>	<b>moj-ej</b>	<b>moj-em</b>	<b>moj-ih</b>
<i>dative</i>	<b>moj-emu</b>	<b>moj-ej</b>	<b>moj-emu</b>	<b>moj-im</b>
<i>instrumental</i>	<b>moj-im</b>	<b>moj-eju</b>	<b>moj-im</b>	<b>moj-imi</b>
<i>vocative</i>	<b>moj</b>	<b>moj-a</b>	<b>moj-e</b>	<b>moj-i, moj-e</b>

The same style as **moj, moja, moje, moji** = "my, of me" has **tvoj, tvoja, tvoje, tvoji** = "yours, of you (sg.)" and **svoj, svoja, svoje, svoji** = "of self".

	<i>masculine</i>	<i>feminine</i>	<i>neuter</i>	<i>plural</i>
<i>nominative</i>	<b>naš</b>	<b>naš-a</b>	<b>naš-e</b>	<b>naš-i, naš-e</b>
<i>accusative</i>	<b>naš-ego, naš</b>	<b>naš-u</b>	<b>naš-e</b>	<b>naš-ih, naš-e</b>
<i>genitive</i>	<b>naš-ego</b>	<b>naš-ej</b>	<b>naš-ego</b>	<b>naš-ih</b>
<i>locative</i>	<b>naš-em</b>	<b>naš-ej</b>	<b>naš-em</b>	<b>naš-ih</b>
<i>dative</i>	<b>naš-emu</b>	<b>naš-ej</b>	<b>naš-emu</b>	<b>naš-im</b>
<i>instrumental</i>	<b>naš-im</b>	<b>naš-eju</b>	<b>naš-im</b>	<b>naš-imi</b>
<i>vocative</i>	<b>naš</b>	<b>naš-a</b>	<b>naš-e</b>	<b>naš-i, naš-e</b>

It is obvious, that in the same style as **naš, naša, naše, naši** = "our, of us" is **vaš, vaša, vaše, vaši** = "yours, of you (pl.)".

## **possessive pronouns jegov = his, its; jejin = her; jihny = their**

These three pronouns are inflected by the hard pattern **toj** in all cases, genders and number: **jegov** = *his* or *its*, **jejin** = *her*, **jihny** = *their*.

example: **jegova dobra žena** = his good woman/wife/lady

<i>nominative</i>	<b>jegova dobra žena</b>
<i>accusative</i>	<b>jegovu dobru ženu</b>
<i>genitive</i>	<b>jegovoj dobroj ženy</b>
<i>locative</i>	<b>jegovoj dobroj ženě</b>
<i>dative</i>	<b>jegovoj dobroj ženě</b>
<i>instrumental</i>	<b>jegovoju dobroju ženoju</b>
<i>vocative</i>	<b>jegova dobra ženo!</b>

## **interrogative pronouns kto, ktory = who; čto, kaky = what**

Please remember that pronouns **kto?** = "who?", **čto?** = "what?" are used at the position of the noun, and pronouns **ktory?** = "who?, which?", **kaky?** = "what?, what kind of?" are used in the position of the adjective. But semantically there is no difference between **kto** and **ktory** and between **čto** and **kaky**.

examples:

**Kto jest doma?** = Who is at home?

(**kto** = subject of the sentence in nominative, in the position of a noun)

**Čto tu dělaješ?** = What are you doing here?

(**čto** = object of the sentence in accusative, in position of a noun)

**Ktory student tamo sedi?** = Which student (male) is sitting there?

(**ktory** = "which" is added to the noun **student** as its adjective)

**Kako jest ime twojego prijatelja?** = What is the name of your friend?

(**kaky** = "what, what kind of" is added to the noun **prijatelj** as its adjective)

Remember, that **kto** is declined using entirely the animate (*A* = *G*) hard pattern, **čto** is declined using entirely the inanimate (*A* = *N*) soft pattern. They have only one form for all three genders and have only singular form:

<i>nominative</i>	<b>kto</b>	<b>čto</b>
<i>accusative</i>	<b>kogo</b>	<b>čto</b>
<i>genitive</i>	<b>kogo</b>	<b>čego</b>
<i>locative</i>	<b>kom</b>	<b>čem</b>
<i>dative</i>	<b>komu</b>	<b>čemu</b>
<i>instrumental</i>	<b>kym</b>	<b>čim</b>
<i>vocative</i>	-	-

**ktry, ktra, ktor** ... and **kaky, kaka, kako** ... are declined in the hard pattern as any ordinary adjective (e.g. **kakogo, kakomu, kakoj** ...).

## interrogative pronoun **koj**

The interrogative pronouns **koj, koja, koje** = are the Southern Slavic forms identical to the Eastern and Western Slavic pronoun forms **ktry, ktra, ktor**. These pronouns are inflected in the same way as the possessive pronouns **moj** and **tvoj** = "my", "your" - by the soft pattern.

	<i>masculine</i>	<i>feminine</i>	<i>neuter</i>	<i>plural</i>
<i>nominative</i>	<b>koj</b>	<b>koj-a</b>	<b>koj-e</b>	<b>koj-i, koj-e</b>
<i>accusative</i>	<b>koj-ego, koj</b>	<b>koj-u</b>	<b>koj-e</b>	<b>koj-ih, koj-e</b>
<i>genitive</i>	<b>koj-ego</b>	<b>koj-ej</b>	<b>koj-ego</b>	<b>koj-ih</b>
<i>locative</i>	<b>koj-em</b>	<b>koj-ej</b>	<b>koj-em</b>	<b>koj-ih</b>
<i>dative</i>	<b>koj-emu</b>	<b>koj-ej</b>	<b>koj-emu</b>	<b>koj-im</b>
<i>instrumental</i>	<b>koj-im</b>	<b>koj-eju</b>	<b>koj-im</b>	<b>koj-imi</b>
<i>vocative</i>	<b>koj</b>	<b>koj-a</b>	<b>koj-e</b>	<b>koj-i</b>

Both the **koj** and **ktry** forms are inflected in all three genders and all cases as adjectives.

examples:

**Koj student tamo sedi?** = Which student (male) is sitting there?  
(**ktry = koj** = "which" is added to the noun **student** as its adjective)

## interrogative pronouns **kogo, čego** = whose

Note that these pronouns are identical to the genitive of pronouns **kto** = who, **čto** = what. This means that they remain noninflected regardless of whether their subject is inflected.

example:

**Kogo jest tuto auto?** = Whose is this car?

## interrogative pronouns and their answers

In Interslavic, as in most Slavic languages, a basic interrogative pronoun can be modified to create different meanings by adding prefixes to the interrogative pronoun's root form. These same prefixes (e.g. **t-, in-, ni-, ně-, vse-**, ...) are used for numerals and adverbs as well.

<b>kaky?</b>	which?
<b>taky</b>	this, such a
<b>ovaky</b>	this, such a (roughly)
<b>onaky</b>	this, such a (distantly)
<b>inaky</b>	other one
<b>nikaky</b>	nobody
<b>někaky</b>	somebody, anybody
<b>vsekaky</b>	everybody, whoever

## relative pronouns in subordinate clauses - **ktorý=koj, kaky ... ižé**

There are two ways to refer something from the superordinate clause to the subordinate clause:

1. Using any standard interrogative pronoun (e.g. **ktorý=koj, kaky, ...**). This method is chosen in a situation where a subordinate clause adds or clarifies some still not fully known concept from a main sentence.

example:

**Kto jest tamtoj člověk, ktorý imaje zeleno auto?** = Who is that man, who has a green car? (Here we need to define this unknown man.)

**Ne hoču auto, v ktorom jest slaby motor.** = I do not want a car, in which the engine is not powerful. (Here we need to define this unknown car.)

**Ne hoču auto, v kojem jest slaby motor.** = I do not want a car, in which the engine is not powerful. (Here we need to define this unknown car.)

2. Using special relative pronoun **ižé**. This method is used in contexts where a subordinate clause adds a new feature to some already known and definite concept in the main sentence.

example:

**Otče naš, ižé jesi na nebesah.** = Our Father (*V*), who art in heaven.  
(Here we add the new feature to the already known Father.)

The relative pronoun **ižé** has the same form in all nominatives, and in all other cases it has the same forms as the pronoun **on, ona, ono ...** from page 60 with added postfix **-žé**.

	<i>masculine</i>	<i>feminine</i>	<i>neuter</i>	<i>plural</i>
<i>nominative</i>	<b>ižé</b>	<b>ižé</b>	<b>ižé</b>	<b>ižé</b>
<i>accusative</i>	<b>(n)jegožé, (n)jejžé</b>	<b>(n)južé</b>	<b>(n)ježé</b>	<b>(n)jihžé, (n)ježé</b>
<i>genitive</i>	<b>(n)jegožé</b>	<b>(n)jejžé</b>	<b>(n)jegožé</b>	<b>(n)jihžé</b>
<i>locative</i>	<b>(n)jemžé</b>	<b>(n)jejžé</b>	<b>(n)jemžé</b>	<b>(n)jihžé</b>
<i>dative</i>	<b>(n)jemužé</b>	<b>(n)jejžé</b>	<b>(n)jemužé</b>	<b>(n)jimžé</b>
<i>instrumental</i>	<b>(n)jimžé</b>	<b>(n)jejužé</b>	<b>(n)jimžé</b>	<b>(n)jimižé</b>
<i>vocative</i>	-	-	-	-

examples:

**Moj prijatelj, jegožé mlada žena tamо ide, jest bolestny.** = My friend, whose young wife is going there, is sick.

**Moj dom, v njemžé žijut šest ljudij, jest maly.** = My house, in which 6 people live, is small.

Finally, it should be noted that it is not a big mistake to use only interrogative pronouns (**ktorý, ktorá, ktoro, ktorí**) in all situations.

## 8. adjectives

Interslavic adjectives are formed by adding endings (and sometimes also prefixes) to other words. They are inflected and have three genders in singular (note: there is only one plural form for all genders). Words are palatalized when these endings are added (e.g. **k**→č, **h**→š, **g**→ž). Adjectives ending at č, š, ž, j have *soft pattern* (e.g. **svěži**, **svěžego**), otherwise have *hard pattern* (e.g. **dobry**, **dobrogo**).

The most commonly-used endings (in the order *m. f. n. pl.*) are:

- **-sky, -ska, -sko ... (hard pattern)** This is the most common adjective ending.  
example: **rus, russky** = Russian (*noun*), Russian (*adj.*),  
**slovak, slovačsky** = Slovak (*noun*), Slovak (*adj.*).  
• **-ji, -ja, -je ... (soft pattern)** This expresses some origin, in the way of meaning "**od + genitive**" (*ablative*) = "from somebody/something".  
example: **bog, božji** = God (*noun*), god, divine (*adj.m.*),  
**něčto od Boga jest božje** = something from the God is divine (*adj.n.*).  
• **-ov, -ova, -ovo ...** This expresses some kind of an ownership by a masculine subject, in the way of meaning "genitive" = "of somebody/something".  
example: **Petrova kniga** = Peter's book, book of Peter.  
• **-in, -ina, -ino ...** This expresses some kind of an ownership by a feminine subject, in the way of meaning "genitive" = "of somebody/something".  
example: **Anina kniga** = Anna's book, book of Anna.  
• **-ny, -na, -no ...** This expresses some source, in the way of meaning "**iz + genitive**" = "from somebody/something".  
example: **železo, železny** = iron (*noun*), iron (*adj.m.*),  
**něčto iz železa jest železno** = something from iron is from iron.  
• **bez- -ny, bez- -na, bez- -no, bez- -ni**. This expresses some exclusion, in the way of meaning "**bez + genitive**" = "without somebody/something".  
example: **meso, bezmesny** = meat (*noun*), without meat (*adj.*), **něčto bez mesa jest bezmesno** = something without meat is without meat.  
• **nad-/ -ny, nad-/ -na, nad-/ -no, nad-/ -ni ...** This expresses some augmentation or elevation, in the way of meaning "**nad + instrumental**" = "above/super somebody/something"  
example: **zemja, nadzemny** = earth (*noun*), aerial, superterrestrial (*adj.*),  
**něčto nad zemjeju jest nadzemno** = something above the Earth is aerial.

Of course, these endings can be combined as for example:

**Petrovska orchestra (-ov + -ska)** = The orchestra of Peter ("of Peter" as adjective).

## declension

Contemporary Slavic languages mostly use two patterns for the inflection of adjectives: *soft* and *hard*. Both these patterns evolved from the Old Slavonic system of definite inflection adjectives: *adjective + pronoun on, ona, ono* in its archaic form **i, ja, je**:

N: <b>dobrъ + i</b>	→ <b>dobrъi</b>	N: <b>svěžъ + i</b>	→ <b>svěžы</b>
G: <b>dobra + jego</b>	→ <b>dobrajego</b>	G: <b>svěža+ jego</b>	→ <b>svěžajego</b>
D: <b>dobru + jemu</b>	→ <b>dobrujemу</b>	D: <b>svěžu+ jemu</b>	→ <b>svěžujemu</b>

In Interslavic, we tried to find a consensus across all contemporary Slavic languages. The solution is yet more complicated, that there evolved complicated and mutually different orthography traditions in writing vowels **i/y** after consonants **k** and **g** during centuries of evolution. For example in Russian **k** is regarded as a hard consonant (Russian uses hard ending **-kogo**), but the modern Russian orthography requires to write only **ki**.

Fortunately, the difference between adjective inflection patterns are only in their different vowels (e.g. Russian hard pattern **-ogo** and soft **-ego**, Polish hard pattern **-ego** and soft **-iego**, Czech hard pattern **-ého** and soft **-ího** and so on ...). This means that the Interslavic simplified solution of having only two adjective patterns without exceptions and additional orthography rules is understandable to everyone.

The problem of **ki/ky** and **gi/gy** in different orthography traditions is ignored. The writing of **i/y** has only the morphological role (e.g. **kratk-y** is *masc. N sg.*, **kratk-i** is *masc. animated N plural*).

**Good news is that the two interslavic adjective declension patterns are identical to the two interslavic pronoun patterns (see page 60) including the same rule about masculine animate/inanimate accusative described at page 59.**

**dobry** = good      (*hard pattern - identical to the hard pronoun pattern*)

	<i>m. anim.</i>	<i>m. inanim.</i>	<i>feminine</i>	<i>neuter</i>	<i>pl. m. anim.</i>	<i>plural other</i>
<i>nominative</i>	<b>dobr-y</b>		<b>dobr-a</b>	<b>dobr-o</b>	<b>dobr-i</b>	<b>dobr-e</b>
<i>accusative</i>	<b>dobr-ogo</b>	<b>dobr-y</b>	<b>dobr-u</b>	<b>dobr-o</b>	<b>dobr-yh</b>	<b>dobr-e</b>
<i>genitive</i>		<b>dobr-ogo</b>	<b>dobr-oj</b>	<b>dobr-ogo</b>		<b>dobr-yh</b>
<i>locative</i>		<b>dobr-om</b>	<b>dobr-oj</b>	<b>dobr-om</b>		<b>dobr-yh</b>
<i>dative</i>		<b>dobr-omu</b>	<b>dobr-oj</b>	<b>dobr-omu</b>		<b>dobr-ym</b>
<i>instrumental</i>		<b>dobr-ym</b>	<b>dobr-aju</b>	<b>dobr-ym</b>		<b>dobr-ymi</b>
<i>vocative</i>	<b>dobr-y!</b>		<b>dobr-a!</b>	<b>dobr-o!</b>	<b>dobr-i!</b>	<b>dobr-e!</b>

**svěži** = fresh (*soft pattern used after č,š,ž,j - identical to the soft pronoun pattern*)

	<i>m. anim.</i>	<i>m. inanim.</i>	<i>feminine</i>	<i>neuter</i>	<i>pl. m. anim.</i>	<i>plural other</i>
<i>nominative</i>	<b>svěž-i</b>		<b>svěž-a</b>	<b>svěž-e</b>	<b>svěž-i</b>	<b>svěž-e</b>
<i>accusative</i>	<b>svěž-ego</b>	<b>svěž-i</b>	<b>svěž-u</b>	<b>svěž-e</b>	<b>svěž-ih</b>	<b>svěž-e</b>
<i>genitive</i>		<b>svěž-ego</b>	<b>svěž-ej</b>	<b>svěž-ego</b>		<b>svěž-ih</b>
<i>locative</i>		<b>svěž-em</b>	<b>svěž-ej</b>	<b>svěž-em</b>		<b>svěž-ih</b>
<i>dative</i>		<b>svěž-emu</b>	<b>svěž-ej</b>	<b>svěž-emu</b>		<b>svěž-im</b>
<i>instrumental</i>		<b>svěž-im</b>	<b>svěž-eju</b>	<b>svěž-im</b>		<b>svěž-imi</b>
<i>vocative</i>	<b>svěž-i!</b>		<b>svěž-a!</b>	<b>svěž-e!</b>	<b>svěž-i!</b>	<b>svěž-e!</b>

## gradation

Interslavic and English adjectives share the same three-stage system of gradation: indicative, comparative and superlative. In addition, there is yet a fourth *augmentative* form of the indicative which may be used to “amplify” the value of the adjective.

1. *indicative*, This is the standard form of an adjective.

examples:

**zeleny** = green;

**gluboky** = deep;

**dragy** = dear, valuable, expensive;

**svěží** = fresh.

2. *comparative*, This the higher level of property made by endings **-ějši**, **-ějša**, **-ějše**, **-ějši** ... or **-ejši**, **-ejša**, **-ejše**, **-ejši** ... after palatalized soft consonants č, š, ž. When comparing, the genitive case and the preposition **od** (from) is used.

examples:

**zelenější** = greener;

**glubočejši** = deeper;

**dražejší** = dearer;

**svěžejší od tutogo** = fresher (more fresh) than this.

3. *superlative*, This the absolute level of property made by prefix **naj-** added to the comparative form. When comparing, the genitive case and the preposition **iz** (from) is used.

example:

**najdraži iz vseh ljudij** = the most dear/valuable of all people.

4. *augmentative*, This is the augmented form of the *indicative* made by prefix **naj-** added to the indicative form. It is used for example in a respectful salutation.

example:

**najdragý gospodine!** = (very) dear Sir!

## **descriptive gradation**

Like in English we can also use descriptive gradations. Unlike English, however, the basic form of gradation is applicable to all kinds of adjectives. This descriptive gradation also applicable to all kinds of adjectives is made by adding adverbs **vyše**, **najvyše** (higher, the highest) or **bolje**, **najbolje** (bigger, the biggest). Both have exactly the same meaning as "more, the most" in English. The augmentative can be expressed using the adverb **mnogo** (much, many, a lot of, plenty of) or **vysoko** (high).

example:

- |                       |                 |                  |
|-----------------------|-----------------|------------------|
| 1. <b>dragy</b>       | = vyše dragy    | = bolje dragy    |
| 2. <b>dražejší</b>    | = najvyše dragy | = najbolje dragy |
| 3. <b>najdražejší</b> | = vysoko dragy  | = mnogo dragy    |
| 4. <b>najdragy</b>    |                 |                  |

## irregular gradation

Although Interslavic is an artificial language, it cannot exist without irregular adjectives. They are present in all Slavic languages. Neoslavonic has only five of them:

	<i>indicative</i>	<i>comparative</i>
<b>veliky</b>	big, great	<b>bolši</b>
<b>dobry</b>	good	<b>lučši</b>
<b>blagy</b>	pleasant, joyful	<b>unši</b>
<b>maly</b>	small	<b>menši</b>
<b>zly</b>	bad, evil	<b>gorši</b>

Natural Slavic languages have more complicated gradation of adjectives. Typically, it is a kind of omitting the penultimate syllable containing **-j-** and sometimes yet one palatalized syllable more.

for example

**tvrd-ěj-ši** → **tvrd-ši**  
**krat-čej-ši** → **krat-ši**  
**glub-očej-ši** → **glub-ši**  
**bogat-ěj-ši** → **bogat-ši**

Of course, you can use these shorter forms but be ready to use also the original unshortened form for case of need to explain your meaning, if your partner does not understand.

## adjectives at noun positions

Normally adjectives extend nouns or pronouns. But there is also an option to use an isolated adjective without any subsequent noun or pronoun. In this case an adjective behaves as an ordinary noun. In English, this same situation is expressed by an adjective + pronoun *one* (for example: *good one, this one, wrong one, black one, ...*)

examples:

**Tuzi tu ne mogut spati.** (**tuzy** adj. = foreign)  
Foreigners/foreign people/foreign ones cannot sleep here.

**Dajte mi zelenogo.** (**zeleny** adj. = green)  
Give me (this) green one.

## 9. numerals

Please learn Interslavic natural numbers from this table:

0	<b>nula</b>	10	<b>deset</b>		
	<b>nijedin</b>				
	<b>jedin</b> <i>m.</i>				
1	<b>jedna</b> <i>f.</i>	11	<b>jedinnadset</b>	100	<b>sto</b>
	<b>jedno</b> <i>n.</i>				1000 <b>tyseč</b>
	<b>dva</b> <i>m.</i>				
2	<b>dvě</b> <i>f.</i>	12	<b>dvanadset</b>	200	<b>dvasto</b>
	<b>dvě</b> <i>n.</i>				2000 <b>dvatyseč</b>
3	<b>tri</b>	13	<b>trinadset</b>	300	<b>tristo</b>
4	<b>četyri</b>	14	<b>četyrinadset</b>	400	<b>četyridošet</b>
5	<b>pet</b>	15	<b>petnadset</b>	500	<b>petsto</b>
6	<b>šest</b>	16	<b>šestnadset</b>	600	<b>šeststo</b>
7	<b>sedm</b>	17	<b>sedmnadset</b>	700	<b>sedmsto</b>
8	<b>osm</b>	18	<b>osmnadset</b>	800	<b>osmsto</b>
9	<b>devet</b>	19	<b>devetnadset</b>	900	<b>devetsto</b>
					$10^{12}$ <b>trilion</b>
					...

- Just for your interest, Interslavic *teen* numbers (11 ... 19) were evolved from this Old Church Slavonic scheme:

*number+na+deset*, e.g. 15 = **pet+na+deset** = **petnadset**.

- Number **jedin** (*m.*), **jedna** (*f.*), **jedno** (*n.*) is declined as a hard pronoun (**toj**) in the singular and the subject is in corresponding case and gender.

example: **jedin člověk** (*N*), **jednogo člověka** (*G*), **jednomu člověku** (*D*), **jednoj ženy** (*G*), **jedna žena** (*N*) ...

- When added to other numbers, the number 1 has only one universal form **jedna** in all cases and the subject remains in the plural genitive.

example: **dvadesetjedna ljudij** (*N*), **dvadesetjedna ljudij** (*G*), **dvadesetjedna ljudij** (*D*), **dvadesetjedna žen** (*G*), ...

- Number **dva** (*m.*), **dvě** (*f.*), **dvě** (*n.*) declined as **dva** (*N,A*), **dvoh** (*G,A*), **dvom** (*D,L*), **dvoma** (*I*). Number **tri** and **četyri** as **tri** (*N,A*), **trěh** (*G,A*), **trěm** (*D,L*), **trěmi** (*I*) and the subject is in corresponding case.

example: **dva ljudi** (*N*), **dvoh ljudij** (*G*), **dvom ljudjam** (*D*), **dvoh žen** (*G*), ... **tri ljudi** (*N*), **trěh ljudij** (*G*), **trěm ljudjam** (*D*), **četyřemi ljudjami** (*I*) ...

- All other numbers ending with a consonant (e.g. **-t**, **-m**, **-č**) are declined as the noun declension pattern for **kost** (a bone) in the singular and the subject remains in the plural genitive.

example: **pet ljudi** (*N*), **peti ljudij** (*G*), **peti ljudim** (*D*), **peti žen** (*G*), ...

6. Number **nula** (zero, nula) is declined as the feminine noun declension pattern **žena** (a woman) in the singular and the subject remains in the plural genitive.  
example: **nula ljudij** (N), **nuly ljudij** (G), **nulě ljudij** (D), **nuly žen** (G), ...
7. There is an alternative form of number zero: **nijedin** (m.), **nijedna** (f.), **nijedno** (n.) and the subject is in corresponding case.  
example: **nijedin člověk** (N), **nijednogo člověka** (G), **nijednomu člověku** (D), **nijednoj ženy** (G), ...
8. Number **sto** (hundred) and its derivatives is declined as the neuter noun declension pattern **sělo** (a village) in the singular and the subject remains in the plural genitive.  
example: **sto ljudij** (N), **sta ljudij** (G), **stu ljudij** (D), **sta žen** (G), ...
9. Number **milion** (million) and its derivatives is declined as the masculine noun declension pattern **grad** (town) in the singular and the subject remains in the plural genitive.  
example: **milion žen** (N), **miliona žen** (G), **milionu žen** (D), ...
10. Composed numbers are written together in decadic triplets separated by spaces, declining the last numeric element only.  
example: 12 327 = **dvanadsettyseč tristodvadesetsedm** (N), **dvanadset tyseč tristodvadesetsedmi** (G), ...

## ordinal numbers

Interslavic ordinal numbers behave (and are declined, of course) in the same way as standard adjectives. Composed ordinal numbers have the ordinal form of the last numeric element only.

0	<b>nulty</b>	10	<b>desety</b>
1	<b>prvy</b>	11	<b>jedninadsety</b>
2	<b>vtory</b>	20	<b>dvadesety</b>
3	<b>tretji</b>	21	<b>dvadesetyprvy</b>
4	<b>četvrtý</b>	22	<b>dvadesetyvtory</b>
5	<b>pety</b>	100	<b>sotny</b>
6	<b>šesty</b>	200	<b>dvěsotny</b>
7	<b>sedmy</b>	1000	<b>tysečny</b>
8	<b>osmy</b>	2000	<b>dvatysečny</b>
9	<b>devety</b>	$10^6$	<b>milionty</b>

## interrogative, demonstrative and indefinite number

These number-related forms are not inflected because they behave grammatically as adverbs. The corresponding subject is attached to them in genitive plural.

Different number-related word forms may be created by adding prefixes to their root: Please learn these from the following table. (note: the prefixes are the same as we discussed above for pronouns - **t-**, **ni-**, **ně-**, ...)

*adverb - like*

<b>koliko?</b>	how much?, how many?	<b>koliky?</b>	which one? (question on the order)
<b>toliko</b>	this amount	<b>toliky</b>	this (answer to the question on the order)
<b>nikoliko</b>	no, nothing	<b>nikoliky</b>	no (answer to the question on the order)
<b>několiko</b>	some, some number of	<b>několiky</b>	some (answer to the question on the order)

*adjective - like*

Remember also the following two indefinite numerals:

**mnogo** many, much (derived from the adjective **mnogy** = multiple)  
**malo** a little, few (derived from the adjective **maly** = small, little)

examples:

**Koliko imaješ aut?** = How many cars (*G*) do you have?  
**Imaju toliko, koliko jest mi trěba.** = I have as many I need.  
**Vidim několiko ljudí.** = I can see some people.

## **fractions, set numbers, multiple numbers**

1. Multiple numbers are made using the multiplicative article **-krat** (times, multiplied by) and behave as adverbs.  
example: **dvakrat** = two times, **desetkrat** = ten times.
2. Pair (doublet) is **par m.** declined as the masculine noun **grad** (town). Corresponding subjects are in genitive plural.  
example: **Imaju tri pary obuvij.** = I have three pairs of shoes.
3. All kinds of containers or similar concepts are expressed in the same way as pairs. Corresponding subjects are in genitive plural.  
example: **Imaješ jedin buket květov.** = You have one bouquet of flowers.
4. One half ( $\frac{1}{2}$ ) **polovina** is declined by the feminine noun pattern **žena** (woman). Corresponding subjects are in genitive singular.  
example: **polovina hlěba** = half a loaf of bread.
5. Other fractions ( $\frac{1}{3}, \frac{1}{4}, \dots$ ) are made from ordinal numbers by adding suffix **-ina** and are declined by the feminine noun pattern **žena** (woman). Corresponding subjects are in genitive singular.  
example: **čtvrtina hlěba** = quarter of loaf of bread.
6. Decimal numbers have **točka** (decimal point). This word originally means any point and is declined by the feminine noun pattern **žena** (woman), but in decimal numbers it has always the same fixed form **točka**.  
example: 3.14 = **tri točka četyrinadset**.
7. In written text, we need to write ordinal numbers in the nominative with point and in all other cases with their corresponding inflection endings.  
example:  
**5.** = 5<sup>th</sup>, fifth (m. sg. N), **5-oho** = 5<sup>th</sup>, fifth (m. sg. G), **5-ym** = 5<sup>th</sup>, fifth (m. sg. I), ...

## 10. present tense of verbs

Verbs are the foundation of any language. Interslavic verbs have (like in English) three persons, singular and plural (optionally dual) number, imperative, participles, conditional and three tenses (present, past and future) extendable to the total number of six tenses. From this perspective, Interslavic does not differ from any other Indo-European language. The difference with English is that all these verbal forms are formed by adding endings to the word stem (root). Therefore, Interslavic is very similar also to Greek, Latin or Romance languages.

Fortunately the verb system is not so difficult to learn as inflection. With just a few exceptions, the Neoslavonic edition of Interslavic has only two main verb classes having only two patterns: *hard* and *soft*. This means that it is enough to learn these two sets of endings and apply them to almost every verb.

1. Each Interslavic verb can have two different stems: *past* and *present*. The *present stem* can be either identical to the *past stem*, or the *present stem* is either longer or softer than corresponding *past stem*. This information should be written in dictionaries. (**dělati, dělaješ** - fo example)
2. Interslavic verbs have the *infinitive*. Remember, that the infinitive of all verbs has ending **-ti** added to the *past stem*. The *infinitive* has almost the same role as in English. (Details will be explained in subsequent chapters.)
3. We should also remind the reader about palatalization and euphony. Remember that in order to sound almost like an ordinary natural Slavic language, we need to improve some artificially generated sound combinations caused by word bases and endings. Look the text at page 37 to remind yourself.

### hard conjugation pattern (-eš verbs)

verb **dělati** (to do) - an example of longer present verb stem

ja (I)	<b>dělaj-u</b>	my (we)	<b>dělaj-emo</b>
ty (you sg.)	<b>dělaj-eš</b>	vy (you pl.)	<b>dělaj-ete</b>
on, ona, ono (he, she, it)	<b>dělaj-e</b>	oni (they)	<b>dělaj-ut</b>

verb **dělati** (to do) - an example of the optional possible set of endings

ja (I)	<b>dělaj-em</b>	my (we)	<b>dělaj-emo</b>
ty (you sg.)	<b>dělaj-eš</b>	vy (you pl.)	<b>dělaj-ete</b>
on, ona, ono (he, she, it)	<b>dělaj-e</b>	oni (they)	<b>dělaj-ut</b>

verb **pisati** (to write) - an example of softer present verb stem

ja (I)	<b>piš-u</b> or <b>piš-em</b>	my (we)	<b>piš-emo</b>
ty (you sg.)	<b>piš-eš</b>	vy (you pl.)	<b>piš-ete</b>
on, ona, ono (he, she, it)	<b>piš-e</b>	oni (they)	<b>piš-ut</b>

It is obvious that the endings of this hard pattern (-**u** or -**em**, -**eš**, -**e**, -**emo**, -**ete**, -**ut**) are identical for both longer or softer (and unchanged, of course) present stems.

Please note that modern western and southern Slavic languages tend to shorten longer forms by removing syllable -**je-** (e.g. **děla-je-š** → **děla-š**, **děla-je-m** → **děla-m**, ...). In Interslavic it is not recommended so much because this phenomenon is not present in the same way in all Slavic languages. But you can meet it. Try to conjugate these additional verbs:

<b>čitati, čitaj-eš</b>	to read	<b>piti, pij-eš</b>	to drink
<b>mogti, mož-eš</b>	can	<b>znati, znaj-eš</b>	to know
<b>hotěti, hoč-eš</b>	to want	<b>iskati, iskaj-eš</b>	to search, to look for
<b>prodati, prodaj-eš</b>	to sell	<b>kazati, kaž-eš</b>	to tell
<b>plavati, plav-eš</b>	to swim	<b>tekti, teč-eš</b>	to flow

## soft conjugation pattern (-iš verbs)

verb **variti** (to cook) - an example

<b>ja (I) var-ju</b> or <b>var-im</b>	<b>my (we) var-imo</b>
<b>ty (you sg.) var-iš</b>	<b>vy (you pl.) var-ite</b>
<b>on, ona, ono (he, she, it) var-i</b>	<b>oni (they) var-et</b>

The good message is, that all verbs in this soft pattern (-**ju** or -**im**, -**iš**, -**i**, -**imo**, -**ite**, -**et**) have identical past and present stems. But unlike in the hard pattern they can be affected by the euphony rule from the first chapter (**cj→č**, **sj→š**, **zj→ž**) in order to improve the final form as follows:

verb **prositi** (to please) - an example of euphony (**sju→šu**)

<b>ja (I) proš-u</b>	<b>my (we) pros-imo</b>
<b>ty (you sg.) pros-iš</b>	<b>vy (you pl.) pros-ite</b>
<b>on, ona, ono (he, she, it) pros-i</b>	<b>oni (they) pros-et</b>

Verb **prositi** (to please) - an example of the optional possible set of endings without the need to apply euphony:

<b>ja (I) pros-im</b>	<b>my (we) pros-imo</b>
<b>ty (you sg.) pros-iš</b>	<b>vy (you pl.) pros-ite</b>
<b>on, ona, ono (he, she, it) pros-i</b>	<b>oni (they) pros-et</b>

There is the question of which option (-**u/-ju** or -**em/-im**) to choose. Eastern Slavic languages (e.g. Russian) prefer ending -**u/-ju**, but some western and southern Slavic languages (e.g. Slovak or Croatian) tend to prefer ending -**em/-im**. Decide for yourself what is the best for you.

Try to conjugate these additional verbs in both versions:

<b>spati, sp-iš</b>	to sleep	<b>platiti, plat-iš</b>	to pay
<b>kupiti, kup-iš</b>	to buy	<b>letěti, let-iš</b>	to fly
<b>slyšeti, slyš-iš</b>	to hear	<b>govoriti, gorov-iš</b>	to speak
<b>viděti, vid-iš</b>	can	<b>razuměti, razum-iš</b>	to understand
<b>učiti, uč-iš</b>	to teach	<b>blagodariti, b...dar-iš</b>	to thank, to bless

## irregular verbs **byti, věděti, dati, idti, jesti**

Spoken languages have many exceptions to their verbs. We have reduced these exceptions of Interslavic to an absolute minimum in order to maximize understandability for Slavic speakers. Thus, we have only five fully irregular verbs: **byti** (to be), **věděti** (to know), **dati** (to give), **idti** (to go), and **jesti** (to eat). You have already learned the verb **byti**. Remember it and learn the next verbs as well:

<b>byti</b> (to be)	<b>věděti</b> (to know)	<b>dati</b> (to give)	<b>idti</b> (to go)	<b>jesti</b> (to eat)					
jesm jesi jest/je	jesmo jeste sut	věm věš vě	věmo věte vědut	dam daš da	damo date dadut	idu ideš ide	idemo idete idut	jedu jedeš jede	jedemo jedete jedut

Please note that some other verbs also follow these irregular patterns. There are various derivatives of these verbs:

1. Other verbs having the infinitive ending **-sti** are conjugated in a similar way as **jesti**, for example: **vesti** - **vedu, vedeš, vedeny, vedl**, ... (to lead, to guide, to conduct); **krasti** - **kradu, kradeš, kradeny, kradl** ... (to steal).
2. Irregular verb **jesti** (to eat) can make false synonym with the verb *to ride, to drive* (**jehati** in Interslavic) in some Slavic languages. Therefore, a similar but regular verb can be used if necessary: **jedati** (to eat) **jadaju, jedaješ, jedal, jedi!**
3. There are yet other verbs having miscellaneous prefixes to these verbs, for example: **prodati, prodam, prodaš, prodany, prodal** ... (to sell); **pridati, pridam, pridaš, pridany, pridal** ... (to add)

### notes

1. Interslavic recognizes two forms of the second person (you): singular (**ty**) and plural (**vy**). Although the singular and the plural are different, the plural form (**vy**) is also used among our Slavic languages when you are addressing only one person in a formal, polite manner (like a child addressing an adult, or when you converse with someone you have never met before). Once you become more than acquaintances, the verb forms can shift to the singular form (**ty**). Adults, however, will almost always address children using the singular verb form (**ty**).

example:

**Gospodine doktore** (sg. *V*), **kako jeste** (pl.)? (Sir/Mr.) doctor, how are you?  
**Moj prijatelju** (sg. *V*), **kde jesi** (sg.)? My friend, where are you?

2. Just to remember again: There is no need to add personal pronouns (**ja, ty, on, ona, ono, my, vy, oni**) to verbs in every situation. In English, one must use the pronoun in order to be clear which verb tense is being used ("I go" "they go"), whereas in Interslavic, the verbs themselves carry full personal information through the personal postfixes. This style is also similar to Romance languages.

example:

**čitaju** = (I) read, **čitaje** = (he) reads, **čitajemo** = (we) read, **čitajut** = (they) read ...

3. There is the verb **blagodariti**, **blagodar-iš** (to thank). The second option is to use the noun **hvala** (f. thank), or the derived regular verb **hvaliti**, **hval-iš** (to bless, to laud).

## examples

### **Idete li autom?**

Do you (pl.) go by car (I)? - note instrumental case without preposition.

### **Moj prijatelj meso na jedaje, on jest vegetarian.**

My friend (m.) does not eat meat, he is a vegetarian.

### **Moja prijateljica meso na jedaje, ona jest vegetarianica.**

My friend (f.) does not eat meat, she is a vegetarian.

### **Kaku knigu čitaješ?**

What book do you (sg.) read?

### **Prošu, kde jest stanica autobusa?**

(I) please where is the bus station?

### **Prosim, kde jest stanica autobusa?**

(I) please where is the bus station?

### **Vidimo veliky dom.**

We (can) see a big house.

### **Koliko plaču/platim?**

How much do I need to pay?

### **Ne možeš idti od nas.**

You cannot go from us.

### **Idete li do kina?**

Do you (pl.) go to the cinema?

### **Da, idemo.**

Yes, we do. (We go.)

### **Piješ li pivo?**

Do you (sg.) drink beer?

### **Ne, pivo ne piju.**

No, I do not drink beer.

### **Hočete li něčto kupiti?**

Do you (pl.) want to buy something?

### **Tutoj gospod vse plati.**

This gentleman is paying for everything.

### **Prosimo Vas, čto tamo vidite?**

(We) please, what can you (pl.) see there?

### **Tvoj prijatelj mně ne hoče prodati svoje auto.**

Your friend does not want to sell me his car (e.g. car of Your friend was to be sold).

# 11. adverbs, idioms

Adverbs are words which extend the meanings of some corresponding verb or adjective. Adverbs are not conjugated.

1. Adverbs which are regularly formed from adjectives in the neuter nominative form. It means, they have hard ending **-o** or soft **-e** after soft consonants **č, š, ž, j**.

example:

<b>mnogy,-a,-o</b> (numerous, <i>adj.</i> )	→ <b>mnogo</b> (much, many, plenty of, <i>adv.</i> )
<b>dobry,-a,-o</b> (good, <i>adj.</i> )	→ <b>dobro</b> (good, <i>adv.</i> )
<b>maly,-a,-o</b> (small, <i>adj.</i> )	→ <b>malo</b> (a few, <i>adv.</i> )
<b>novy,-a,-o</b> (new, <i>adj.</i> )	→ <b>novo</b> (new, <i>adv.</i> )
<b>prěmy,-a,-o</b> (straight, <i>adj.</i> )	→ <b>prěmo</b> (straight, <i>adv.</i> )
<b>povratny,-a,-o</b> (backward, return, <i>adj.</i> )	→ <b>povratno</b> (backward, return, <i>adv.</i> )
<b>lěvy,-a,-o</b> (left, <i>adj.</i> )	→ <b>lěvo</b> (left, <i>adv.</i> )
<b>desny,-a,-o</b> (right, <i>adj.</i> )	→ <b>desno</b> (right, <i>adv.</i> )
<b>pravy,-a,-o</b> (right, correct, <i>adj.</i> )	→ <b>pravo</b> (right, correct, <i>adv.</i> )
<b>krivy,-a,-o</b> (false, awry, <i>adj.</i> )	→ <b>krivo</b> (false, awry, <i>adv.</i> )
<b>svěži,-a,-e</b> (fresh, <i>adj.</i> )	→ <b>svěže</b> (fresh, <i>adv.</i> )

2. Adjectives **-sky, -ska, -sko, ...** have the adverbs **-sky**.

example:

<b>medžuslovjansky</b> (Slavic, <i>adj.</i> )	→ <b>medžuslovjansky</b> (Slavic, <i>adv.</i> )
<b>anglijsky</b> (English, <i>adj.</i> )	→ <b>anglijsky</b> (English, <i>adv.</i> )

## derived adverbs

Some adverbs are formed from the fossilized proverbial structures of a noun and, in some cases, with an optional added preposition or pronoun. Such a structure is then written together as one word and behaves as one non-inflected word. They include for example:

<b>vkupě</b>	<i>v kupě (L)</i>	together (originally: in a group)
<b>izjutra</b>	<i>iz jutra (G)</i>	tomorrow (originally: from the morning)
<b>gorě</b>	<i>gorě (L)</i>	up, to the top (originally: a hill in locative)
<b>dolu</b>	<i>dolu (L)</i>	down, to the bottom (originally: a valley in locative)
<b>lětom</b>	<i>letom (I)</i>	in/during a summer (originally: a summer in instr.)
<b>zimoju</b>	<i>zimoju (I)</i>	in/during a winter (originally: a winter in instr.)
<b>jutrom</b>	<i>jutrom (I)</i>	in/during a morning/sunrise (orig: a morning in instr.)
<b>včera</b>	<i>večera (G)</i>	yesterday (originally: an evening in genitive)
<b>doma</b>	<i>doma (G)</i>	at home (originally: a house in genitive)
<b>jutras</b>	<i>jutra sego (G)</i>	this morning (originally: this morning in genitive)
<b>polednes</b>	<i>poledne sego (G)</i>	this noon (originally: this noon in genitive)
<b>večeras</b>	<i>večera sego (G)</i>	this evening (originally: this evening in genitive)
<b>dnes</b>	<i>dne sego (G)</i>	today (originally: this day in genitive)
<b>nočis</b>	<i>noči sej (G)</i>	tonight (originally: this night in genitive)

## interrogative adverbs and their answers

	<i>initial location</i>	<i>way-through location</i>	<i>aiming location</i>	
<b>kde?</b>	where?	<b>kudu?</b>	where?	<b>kamo?</b> where?
<b>sde</b>	here	<b>sde</b>	here	<b>semo</b> here
<b>tudu,tu</b>	here	<b>tudu,tu</b>	here	<b>tamo</b> there
<b>ovde</b>	there	<b>ovde</b>	there	<b>ovamo</b> there
<b>onde</b>	there	<b>onde</b>	there	<b>onamo</b> there
<b>inde</b>	elsewhere	<b>inude</b>	elsewhere	<b>inamo</b> elsewhere
<b>nikde</b>	no where	<b>nikudu</b>	no where	<b>nikamo</b> no where
<b>někde</b>	anywhere	<b>někudu</b>	anywhere	<b>někamo</b> anywhere
<b>vsekde</b>	everywhere	<b>vsekudu</b>	everywhere	<b>vsemo</b> everywhere
				<i>interrogative</i>
				<i>dmnstr. exactly</i>
				<i>demonstrative</i>
				<i>dmnstr. roughly</i>
				<i>dmnstr. distantly</i>
				<i>alternatively</i>
				<i>nowise, no way</i>
				<i>some, any</i>
				<i>always</i>

	<i>time</i>		<i>modus</i>		<i>number, amount</i>	
<b>kogda</b>	when?		<b>kako?</b>	how?	<b>koliko?</b>	how much?
<b>segda</b>	now	-	-	-	-	<i>interrogative</i>
<b>togda</b>	that time		<b>tako</b>	this way	<b>toliko</b>	so much
<b>ovegda</b>	that time		<b>ovako</b>	this way	-	<i>dmonstr. exactly</i>
<b>onegda</b>	that time		<b>onako</b>	this way	-	<i>demonstrative</i>
<b>inogda</b>	another time		<b>inako</b>	other way	-	<i>dmnstr. roughly</i>
<b>nikogda</b>	never		<b>nikako</b>	no way	<b>nikoliko</b>	no
<b>někogda</b>	sometimes		<b>někako</b>	some way	<b>několiko</b>	some
<b>vsegda</b>	always		<b>vsekako</b>	all way	<b>vse</b>	everything
						<i>nowise, no way</i>
						<i>some, any</i>
						<i>always</i>

1. Note in this table that there are several symmetries among pronouns, numerals and adverbs made by the same prefixes (e.g. **t-**, **in-**, **ni-**, **ně-**, **vs-**). For details, refer to the chapters about pronouns and numerals again.
2. Adverbs **kamo?**, **semo**, **tamo**, ... can be combined with the prefix **od-** (from) in order to make adverb **odkamo?** (where from?), **odtamo** (from there), ...

## gradation

Gradation of adverbs is symmetrical to the gradation of adjectives. There are 4 levels and two modes: direct and descriptive. The prefix is **naj-** (the same as for adjectives) and the suffix is **-ěje** or **-eje** after **č, š, ž, j**. There are five irregular adverbs made from the same irregular adjectives in the comparative: **bolše, lučše, unše, menše, gorše** according to irregular adjectives.

example:

1. **silno** = strong
2. **silněje** = **vyše silno** = stronger, more strong
3. **najsilněje** = **najvyše silno** = strongest, the most strong
4. **najsilno** = **mnogo silno** = very strong

Natural Slavic languages have more complicated gradation of adverbs. Typically, it is a kind of omitting the penultimate syllables, for example:

**daleko** → **dalěč-ěje** → **dal-ěče-je** → **dalje**.

Of course, you can use these shorter forms but be ready to use also the original full-length form in case of your need to explain your meaning, if your partner does not understand.

## idioms

Like virtually every human language, Interslavic has idioms as well. They were chosen with the aim of maximum similarity to spoken Slavic languages and an acceptable level of simplicity. Please learn these idioms:

<b>jest trěba</b> <i>D N/infinitive</i>	needs to, it is required, ... (whom, what)
<b>hoču</b> <i>D A/infinitive</i>	I want (for <i>D</i> ) to ( <i>A or infinitive</i> ) ...
<b>v redu</b>	in order, OK, no problem
<b>i kako li že</b>	although (exactly: and how if that)
<b>drug druga</b>	each other (exactly: a friend of a friend)
<b>odnošeno</b>	mutually (from the verb <b>odnositi</b> = relate to)
<b>na žalost</b>	unfortunately (exactly: at disfavor)
<b>na ščestje</b>	fortunately (exactly: at fortune)
<b>ako ... potom ... inako ...</b>	if ... then ... else ...

examples:

**Trěba jest pisati pismo.** = It is required to write a letter.

**Trěba jest Tobě pisati pismo.** = It is required you to write a letter.

**Hočemo Vam idti do Pragy.** = We want you to go in Prague.

**Dobro govoriš medžuslovjansky.** = You speak Interslavic well.



## 12. imperative of verbs

Imperative is formed from the present stem of any verb.

dělaj-eš	= to do	piš-eš	= to write	vid-iš	= to see
imaj-eš	= to have	hoč-eš	= to want	slyš-iš	= to hear
pluj-eš	= to swim	govor-iš	= to speak	var-iš	= to boil, to cook
znaj-eš	= to know	plat-iš	= to pay	sp-iš	= to sleep
prodaj-eš	= to sell	let-iš	= to fly	gybn-eš	= to die

1. Verbs with their present stem ending with the semiconsonant **j** have the imperative endings **-!** (you singular), **-mo!** (we plural), **-te!** (you plural).

examples:

dělaj-eš	делај-еш	dělaj-!	делај-!	= do! (you singular)
iměj-eš	имеј-еш	iměj-mo!	имеј-мо!	= let us have!
znaj-eš	знај-еш	znaj-mo!	знај-мо!	= let us know!
pluj-eš	плуј-еш	pluj-mo!	плуј-мо!	= let us swim!
prodaj-eš	продај-еш	prodaj-!	продадј-!	= sell! (you singular)

2. All other verbs have the imperative endings **-i!** (you singular), **-imo!** (we plural), **-ite!** (you plural).

examples:

piš-eš	пиш-еш	piš-i!	пиш-и!	= write! (you singular)
hoč-eš	хоч-еш	hoč-imo!	хоч-имо!	= let we want!
govor-iš	говор-иш	govor-ite!	говор-ите!	= speak! (you pl. or polite)
plat-iš	плат-иш	plat-i!	плат-и!	= pay! (you singular)
let-iš	лет-иш	let-imo!	лет-имо!	= let us fly!
vid-iš	вид-иш	vid-ite!	вид-ите!	= see! (you pl. or polite)
slyš-iš	слыш-иш	slyš-ite!	слыш-ите!	= hear! (you plural or polite)
var-iš	вар-иш	var-i!	вар-и!	= boil!, cook! (you singular)
sp-iš	сп-иш	sp-i!	сп-и!	= sleep! (you singular)
gybn-eš	гыбн-еш	gybn-imo!	гыбн-имо!	= let we die!

3. Verbs having the infinitive ending **-ti** connected directly to the stem without a vowel (for example **mogti** = can, **pekti** = to bake) have the stem palatalized.

examples:

mož-eš	мож-еш	mož-i!	мож-!	= can! (you singular)
peč-eš	печ-еш	peč-i!	печ-и!	= bake! (you singular)

note:

Verbs with their present stem ending with a soft consonant (č, š, ž) can optionally have even shorter imperative endings -! (you singular), -mo! (we plural), -te! (you plural) as verbs from the first case.

examples:

piš-eš	пиш-еш	piš-!	пиш-!	= write! (you singular)
hoč-eš	хоч-еш	hoč-mo!	хоч-мо!	= let we want!
slyš-iš	слыш-иш	slyš-te!	слыш-те!	= hear! (you plural)
peč-eš	печ-еш	peč-te!	печ-те!	= bake! (you plural)

## imperative of irregular verbs

irregular verbs **byti, věděti, dati, idti, jesti** have imperative

budi, budite ...	<i>be!</i>
vědi, vědite ...	<i>know!</i>
daj, dajte ...	<i>give!</i>
idi, idite ...	<i>go!</i>
jedaj, jedajte ...	<i>eat!</i>

## subjunctive mood

Subjunctive mood is used to express various states of unreality such as wish, emotion, possibility, judgment, opinion, necessity, or an action that has not yet occurred.

In Interslavic, the subjunctive mood is made from any sentence in the standard (indicative) mood introduced by the particle **da** (*let, let is, may, ...*).

examples:

**Da imajete dobro vrěme!** = May you have good weather!

**Da žije kralj!** = Vivat the king! Let the king live!

## 13. past tenses of verbs

Past tenses of Interslavic verbs are very easy and regular. There is only one pattern for all verbs (except for a few irregular verbs). This pattern is based on the infinitive.

### L-participle

Interslavic (as well as all Slavic languages) operates past tenses with the so called *L-participle*. It is a special form of indeclinable verbal adjective made from the *infinitive*.

1. The *L-participle* is created from the *infinitive* by simply replacing the ending **-ti** either the ending **-l** (m.), **-la** (f.), **-lo** (n.) and **-li** (*universal plural*).
2. The irregular verb **byti** (to be) has its L-participle: **byl, byla, bylo, byli**.
3. The irregular verb **věděti** (to know) has its L-participle: **věděl, věděla, vědělo, věděli**.
4. The irregular verb **dati** (to give) has its L-participle: **dal, dala, dalo, dali**.
5. The irregular verb **idti** (to go) has its own unique L-participle: **išel, išla, išlo, išli** and its derivatives are for example: **do-šel, pri-šel, na-šel** for prefixes ending with a vowel and **od-išel, voz-išel** for prefixes ending with a consonant.
6. The irregular verb **jesti** (to eat) has its L-participle: **jedl, jedla, jedlo, jedli**.

examples:

děla-ti	→ děla-l, děla-la, děla-lo, děla-li (to do)
pisa-ti	→ pisa-l, pisa-la, pisa-lo, pisa-li (to write)
vidě-ti	→ vidě-l, vidě-la, vidě-lo, vidě-li (to see)
pek-ti	→ pek-l, pek-la, pek-lo, pek-li (to bake)
mog-ti	→ mog-l, mog-la, mog-lo, mog-li (can)

## simple past tense

The simple past tense of all verbs is formed in a very similar way to the *L-participle*.

1. Simple past tense is created from the infinitive via simply replacing the ending **-ti** with these endings:

ja -h	my -hmo
ty -še	vy -ste
on, ona, ono -še	oni -hu

2. Verbs having the infinitive ending **-ti** connected directly to the stem without a vowel (for example **mogti** = can, **pekti** = to bake, ...) have the stem palatalized and appended by adding the vowel **-e-**. (e.g. **mož-e-h**, **mož-e-še**, ..., **peč-e-h**, **peč-e-še**, ...)
3. The irregular verb **byti** (to be) has the following past tense forms:  
**bě-h**, **bě-še**, **bě-še**, **bě-hmo**, **bě-ste**, **bě-hu**.
4. The irregular verb **věděti** (to know) has the following past tense forms:  
**vědě-h**, **vědě-še**, **vidě-še**, **vědě-hmo**, **vědě-ste**, **vědě-hu**.
5. The irregular verb **dati** (to give) has the following past tense forms:  
**da-h**, **da-še**, **da-še**, **da-hmo**, **da-ste**, **da-hu**.
6. The irregular verb **idti** (to go) has the following past tense forms:  
**ide-h**, **ide-še**, **ide-še**, **ide-hmo**, **ide-ste**, **ide-hu**.
7. The irregular verb **jesti** (to eat) has the following past tense forms:  
**jede-h**, **jede-še**, **jede-še**, **jede-hmo**, **jede-ste**, **jed-ehu**.

examples:

<b>děla-ti</b>	→ <b>děla-h</b> , <b>děla-še</b> , <b>děla-še</b> , <b>děla-hmo</b> , <b>děla-ste</b> , <b>děla-hu</b> (to do)
<b>pisa-ti</b>	→ <b>pisa-h</b> , <b>pisa-še</b> , <b>pisa-še</b> , <b>pisa-hmo</b> , <b>pisa-ste</b> , <b>pisa-hu</b> (to write)
<b>pek-ti</b>	→ <b>peč-e-h</b> , <b>peč-e-še</b> , <b>peč-e-še</b> , <b>peč-e-hmo</b> , <b>peč-e-ste</b> , <b>peč-e-hu</b> (to bake)

note:

The foregoing simple past tense forms are found in the past tenses of Croatian, Serbian, Montenegrin, Slavo-Macedonian and Bulgarian but were in all Slavic languages in the past. They are not, however, found in all modern Western Slavic or Eastern Slavic languages except for Sorbian.

## composed past tense = prior present tense

As noted above, the Western Slavic and Eastern Slavic languages do not use the simple past tense (-**h**, -**še**, ...). Instead, they use the composed past tense made by the combination of the verb **byti** (to be) in the present tense and the *L-participle* in corresponding personal form (*m.* or *f.* or *n.* or *pl.*).

example:

**dělati** (to do) in the composed past tense

<b>jesm dělal/dělala/dělalo</b>	I did	<b>jesmo dělali</b>	we did
<b>jesi dělal/dělala/dělalo</b>	you did	<b>jeste dělali</b>	you did
<b>dělal/dělala/dělalo</b>	he/she/it did	<b>dělali</b>	they did

**Jesi li pisala pismo?**  
**Ne, on pisal to pismo.**

Did you (*f.*) write a letter?  
No, he wrote this letter.

note:

As You can see, it is not required to use "**jest, je, sut**" in the 3<sup>rd</sup> person:

**je dělal → dělal,**  
**sut dělali → dělali.**

Remember the simple past tense of the verb **byti** (to be):

<b>běh</b>	I was	<b>běhmo</b>	we were
<b>běše</b>	you were	<b>běste</b>	you were
<b>běše</b> (or <b>bě</b> )	he/she/it was	<b>běhu</b>	they were

If you use this past form of the verb **byti** (to be) instead of the present form, you will create the "prior past tense".

example:

**Běše li pisala pismo?**  
**Ne, on běše pisal to pismo.**

Had you (*f.*) written a letter?  
No, he had written this letter.

## **symmetric system of Interslavic present and past tenses**

If we do not assume a simplified system with only one past tense (either simple or composed), we can define the complex symmetric system of four tenses in two time levels: the present level and the past level:

1. *present tense* (e.g. **dělaju, dělaješ, ...**) - this is the actual time of the present
2. *prior-present tense* (e.g. **jesm dělal, jesi dělal, ...**) - this is another auxiliary time just before the present tense, but related to the present tense
3. *past tense* (e.g. **dělah, dělaše, ...**) - this is some time in the past
4. *prior past tense* (e.g. **běh dělal, běše dělal, ...**) - this is another auxiliary time just before the past tense, but related to the past tense

Example of the present time level:

**Hvalimo Vas, že jeste kupili knigy.**

Thank you for buying the books. (thanking = *present*, buying = *prior-present*)

The same example moved to the past time level:

**Hvalihmo Vas, že běste kupili knigy.**

We thanked you for buying the books. (thanking = *past*, buying = *prior-past*)

It is obvious, that the relationship between thanking and buying is the same in both time levels: Buying goes first, thanking goes after.

## 14. future tenses of verbs

Future tenses are even simpler than the past tenses. The only verb having its own uncomposed future tense is **byti** (to be). Please, learn it.

<b>budu</b>	I will be	<b>budemo</b>	we will be
<b>budeš</b>	you will be	<b>budete</b>	you will be
<b>bude</b>	he/she/it will be	<b>budut</b>	they will be

1. The future tense is created by the personal future form of the verb **byti** (to be) and the *infinitive* of the second verb.

example:

<b>budu pisati</b>	= I will write
<b>budemo dělati</b>	= we will do
<b>budeš slyšetí</b>	= you (sg.) will hear

2. As an optional alternative, you may use the verb **hotěti** (to want) instead of the verb **byti** (to be).

example:

<b>hoču pisati</b>	= I will write, I want to write
<b>hočemo dělati</b>	= we will do, we want to do
<b>hočeš slyšetí</b>	= you (sg.) will hear, you (sg.) want to hear

### prior future tense

This is the future tense being before another future event. This additional future tense is created by the personal future form of the verb **byti** (to be) and the *L-participle*.

example:

<b>budu pisal</b>	= I will write
<b>budemo dělali</b>	= we will do
<b>budeš slyšel</b>	= you (sg.) will hear

## **symmetric system of Interslavic future, present and past tenses**

If we do not assume a simplified system with only one past tense (either simple or composed), we can define the complex symmetric system of six tenses in three time levels: the **future level** and the **present level** and the **past level**.

1. *future tense* (e.g. **budu dělati, budeš dělati, ...**) - this is some time in the future
2. *prior-future tense* (e.g. **budu dělal, budeš dělal, ...**) - this is another auxiliary time just before the future tense, but semantically related to the future tense
3. *present tense* (e.g. **dělaju, dělaješ, ...**) - this is the actual time of the present
4. *prior-present tense* (e.g. **jesm dělal, jesi dělal, ...**) - this is another auxiliary time just before the present tense, but semantically related to the present tense
5. *past tense* (e.g. **dělah, dělaše, ...**) - this is some time in the past
6. *prior past tense* (e.g. **běh dělal, běše dělal, ...**) - this is another auxiliary time just before the past tense, but semantically related to the past tense

example of the present time level:

**Hvalimo Vas, že jeste kupili knigy.**

Thank you for buying the books. (thanking = *present*, buying = *prior-present*)

the same example moved to the future time level:

**Budem Vas hvaliti, že budete kupili knigy.**

We will thank you for buying the books. (thanking = *future*, buying = *prior-future*)

the same example moved to the past time level:

**Hvalihmo Vas, že běste kupili knigy.**

We thanked you for buying the books. (thanking = *past*, buying = *prior-past*)

It is obvious, that the temporal relationship between thanking and buying is the same in all three time levels: Buying is before subsequent thanking.

## 15. medial, passive, conditional, aspect of verbs

### active voice

All verbs listed in the previous chapters were in the active voice. The active voice means that a subject in the *nominative* is the performer (= initiator) of action represented by a verb. An object (= target) of action is in the *accusative*.

example:

**Moj prijatelj** (*N, subject*) **vidi** (*verb*) **veliky dom** (*A, object*).  
My friend can see a big house.

- performer (subject) = **moj prijatelj**,
- action (verb) = **vidi** and
- target (object) = **veliky dom**.

### medial voice

This voice means that the object in the *accusative* is identical to the subject in the *nominative*. Interslavic uses a reflexive personal pronoun **se, sebe, sobě, ...** which exactly refers to the subject. This pronoun has been already introduced in the chapter about pronouns on page 59. Note that this pronoun does not have its own nominative case form and that its other cases are symmetrical to personal pronouns "I" and "you". (e.g. **mene = tebe = sebe, mně = tobě = sobě, ...**)

This means that the medial voice can be regarded as a special kind of the active voice, where the subject and the object are identical. These verbs are written with the pronoun **se** in dictionaries (e.g. **kupati se** = to take a bath).

example:

**(Ja) kupaju sebe v bazenu. = Kupaju se v bazenu.**  
I bathe (myself) in a swimming pool.

subject: **ja** = I  
verb: **kupati** = to take a bath  
object: **se** = I, myself

compare this example with the active voice having a different object in accusative:

**Kupaju svojego psa v bazenu.**  
I bathe my dog in a swimming pool.

## passive voice, passive participle

The passive voice is a verbal mode, where the subject in the nominative is not a performer, but a target. This means that it is quite the opposite than in the active voice. This voice is used when the target information is about something far more important than the performer information. The performer, which is less important, may (but need not) be expressed using the instrumental.

The passive voice is formed in the exactly same way as in English: Using a combination of the verb **byti** (to be) and the *passive participle* in the *nominative*. The *passive participle* behaves as a standard adjective of the hard pattern including all genders and cases. It is made in a very similar way as the *L-participle* from the infinitive via modification of the infinitive ending as follows:

1. Hard (-eš) verbs ending by **-iti, -eti, -uti, -tyi** have the passive participle **-ty, -ta, -to ...** and keep the same vowel **-i-, -e-, -u-, -y-** from the infinitive endings.

example:

**piti, piješ** = to drink;  
**bíti, biješ** = to beat, to hit;  
**kleti, kleješ** = to damn, to profane;  
**obuti, obuješ** = to put on shoes;  
**gybnuti, gybneš** = to die;  
**kryti, kryješ** = to cover;

**pity, -a, -o ...** = drunk  
**bity, -a, -o ...** = beaten, hit  
**klety, -a, -o ...** = damned, profaned  
**obuty, -a, -o ...** = booted, having shoes  
**gybnuty, -a, -o ...** = died  
**kryty, -a, -o ...** = covered

2. Soft (-iš) verbs have the passive participle **-jeny, -jena, -jeno ...** (poslě č, š, ž only **-eny, -ena, -eno ...**) with following consonant softening changes from **d, t, c, s, z, st** to **dž, č, š, ž, šč** plus standard transformation **n+j=nj** and **l+j=lj**:

ending <b>-diti</b>	makes	<b>-dženy, -džena, -dženo ...</b> (e.g. <b>dj → dž</b> ),
ending <b>-titi</b>	makes	<b>-čeny, -čena, -čeno ...</b> (e.g. <b>tj → č</b> ),
ending <b>-citi</b>	makes	<b>-čeny, -čena, -čeno ...</b> (e.g. <b>cj → č</b> ),
ending <b>-siti</b>	makes	<b>-šeny, -šena, -šeno ...</b> (e.g. <b>sj → š</b> ),
ending <b>-ziti</b>	makes	<b>-ženy, -žena, -ženo ...</b> (e.g. <b>zj → ž</b> ),
ending <b>-stiti</b>	makes	<b>-ščeny, -ščena, -ščeno ...</b> (e.g. <b>stj → šč</b> ),
ending <b>-niti</b>	makes	<b>-njeny, -njená, -njenó ...</b> ,
ending <b>-liti</b>	makes	<b>-ljeny, -ljená, -ljenó ...</b> .

(about these transformation see euphony rules on page 37)

example:

**variti, variš** = to boil;  
**ljubiti, ljubiš** = to love;  
**vratiti, vratиш** = to return;  
**goniti, goniš** = to hunt, to chase;  
**prositi, prosiš** = to please;  
**poraziti, poraziš** = to defeat, to shock;  
**koristiti, koristiš** = to use, to exploit;  
**videti, vidiš** = to see;

**varjeny, -a, -o ...** = boiled  
**ljubjeny, -a, -o ...** = loved  
**vračeny, -a, -o ...** = returned  
**gonjeny, -a, -o ...** = hunted, chased  
**prošeny, -a, -o ...** = pleased  
**poraženy, -a, -o ...** = defeated, shocked  
**koriščeny, -a, -o ...** = used, exploited  
**vidženy, -a, -o ...** = seen

3. All other verbs (both -eš and -iš) have the passive participle **-ny, -na, -no ...** and keep the same vowel from the infinitive endings. If there is no vowel in infinite endings, the vowel -e- is added and palatalization applied.

example:

**věd-ě-ti** = to know;  
**děl-a-ti** = to do;  
**pis-a-ti** = to write;  
**pek-ti** = to bake;  
**nes-ti** = to carry, to bear;  
**jes-ti** = to eat;

**věd-ě-ny, -a, -o ...** = known  
**děl-a-ny, -a, -o ...** = done  
**pis-a-ny, -a, -o ...** = written  
**peč-e-ny, -a, -o ...** = baked  
**nes-e-ny, -a, -o ...** = carried, borne  
**jes-e-ny, -a, -o ...** = eaten

(**jesti, jedu, jedeš, jedl ...** = *to eat* is an irregular verb - see page 75)

examples:

**Moj pes jest kupany v bazenu.** My dog (is) bathed in a swimming pool.

**Tuto pismo jest pisano na dobry paper.** This letter is written on a good paper.

For euphonic reason, it is also possible to use masculine endings without -y. (e.g. **vidžen, pisan, pečen, gybnut, jeden, koriščen ...**) Even so, this shorter form of masculine passive participle is semantically identical to the standard form (e.g. **vidženy, pi-sany, pečeny, gybnuty, jedeny, koriščeny ...**).

## conditional

The conditional refers to a hypothetical state of affairs, or an uncertain event that is contingent on another set of circumstances. The only verb having its own conditional is **byti** = to be.

<b>byh</b>	I would	<b>byhmo</b>	we would
<b>bys</b>	you would	<b>byste</b>	you would
<b>by</b>	he,she,it would	<b>by</b>	they would

The conditional of all verbs is made by the combination of the *L-participle* and the subsequent conditional of **byti** (to be).

examples:

- Dělal byh.** = I would like to do.  
**Dělal li bys?** = Would you like to do?  
**Pili byhmo.** = We would like to drink.  
**Slyšela bys.** = You (f.) would like to hear.  
**Jedli by.** = They would like to eat.

## aspect of verbs

The aspect defines the temporal flow (or lack thereof) in a given action, event, or state, from the point of view of the speaker. Interslavic has two possible aspects:

1. The unitary (bound) view without any internal temporal flow is known as the *perfective aspect*, and
2. the non-bound view with reference to some internal temporal flow is known as the *imperfective aspect*.

The *perfective aspect* allows the speaker to describe the action related to some specific event as finished, completed, or launched, started in the natural way.

The *imperfective aspect* does not present the action as related to some exact time event, but rather as pending or ongoing and still open or incomplete.

Unfortunately, spoken Slavic languages are very different in verbal aspect. It is possible that the same verb is *perfective* in one language and *imperfective* in another language. Moreover, western and eastern Slavic languages (in contrast to southern Slavic languages) use the present tense in perfective mode as a substitute for the future tense (e.g. **napisati** (to write *pf.*), **napišu** = I will write down). It is important to know this phenomenon while talking to native Slavic speakers.

In the Neoslavonic edition of Interslavic, we have only a few simple rules, which are almost common and comprehensible to various Slavic speakers:

1. All verbs having infinitive **-vati** and present tense **-vaju**, **-vaješ**, **-vaje**, **-vajemo**, **-vajete**, **-vajut** (regardless of whether they have or do not have any prefix) are *imperfective*.

examples:

**davati: davaju, davaješ, ...** (to give)

**strahovati: strahovaju, strahovaješ, ...** (to afraid, to fear)

**od-rěkavati: odrěkavaju, odrěkavaješ, ...** (to deny)

**o-strahovati: ostrahovaju, ostrahovaješ, ...** (to assure, to cover by insurance)

**na-pinavati: napinavaju, napinavaješ, ...** (to strain, to stretch)

2. All verbs having infinitive **-nuti** and present tense **-nu**, **-neš**, **-ne**, **-nemo**, **-nete**, **-nut** (regardless of whether they have or do not have any prefix) are *perfective*.

examples:

**gryznuti: gryznu, gryzneš, ...** (to bite)

**seknuti: seknu, sekneš, ...** (to cut, to strike by a hatchet or a sword)

**o-vladnuti: ovladnu, ovladneš, ...** (to govern, to gain control of something)

**o-slepnuti: oslepnu, oslepneš, ...** (to go blind)

**na-pnuti: napnu, napneš, ...** (to strain, to stretch)

3. All other verbs without any prefix are *imperfective*.

examples:

**čitati:** čitaju, čitaješ, ... (to read)  
**pisati:** pišu, pišeš, ... (to write)  
**viděti:** vidžu/vidím, vidiš, ... (to see)  
**slyšeti:** slyšu/slyším, slyšiš, ... (to hear)  
**čuti:** čuju, čuješ, ... (to feel)  
**platiti:** plaču/platím, platiš, ... (to pay)  
**hotěti:** hoču/hočem, hočeš, ... (to want)

4. All other verbs with any prefix are *perfective*. Any preposition can be used as a prefix. Explore what prepositions these verbal prefixes originate from.

examples:

**od-běgati:** odběžu/odběžím, odběžiš, ... (run out)  
**iz-končiti:** izkonču/izkončím, izkončiš, ... (to close, to conclude, to expire)  
**so-vršti:** sovršu/sovrším, sovršiš, ... (to culminate, to improve, make perfect)  
**pri-stupati:** pristupju/pristupím, pristupiš, ... (to accede, to come on)  
**pro-dati:** prodaju, prodaješ, ... (to sell)  
**na-ložiti:** naložju/naložím, naložiš, ... (to load, to put down)  
**pro-slaviti:** proslavju/proslavím, proslaviš, ... (to celebrate, to proclaim)

5. There are a few very commonly used prefixes, which are good to remember:

**vz-/voz-** (to begin/launch the process)  
**na-** (to perform one event in a process)  
**iz-** (to finish/leave the process)

**s-/so-** (to finish/complete the process and join/merge/create something)  
**raz-** (to finish/complete the process and separate something)  
**do-** (to finish/complete the process and complete/close something)

examples:

**vz-letěti:** vzleču/vzletím, vzletiš, ... (to fly up, to take off, to start flying)  
**na-pisati:** napišu, napišeš, ... (to write down)  
**iz-měřiti:** izměřim, izměriš, ... (to measure, to complete measurement)

**so-vezati:** sovezaju, sovezaješ, ... (to unify, to link, to bind, to unite)  
**raz-děliti:** razdělim, razděliš, ... (to split, to separate)  
**raz-vezati:** razvezaju, razvezaješ, ... (to unlace, to dissolve, to unbound)  
**raz-myслиti:** razmyslim, razmysliš, ... (to think over, to hesitate)  
**do-pisati,** dopišu, dopišeš, ... (to complete writing)



# 16. verbal nouns, participles

## verbal noun (gerund)

A verbal noun (or gerund) is a word having the grammatical behavior (e.g. cases, gender, ...) of a noun, but representing some process expressed by a verb. A verbal noun is a noun that is derived from a verb but can still have a subject and an object (and other attached elements) as an ordinary verb.

A verbal noun is made from the *past passive participle* by adding the endings **-je**. Verbal nouns have a neutral gender and are inflected with the soft neuter pattern **polje, polja, polju, ...**

examples:

<b>pisati</b>	→ <b>pisany</b>	→ <b>pisanje</b> (writing)
<b>slyšeti</b>	→ <b>slyšeny</b>	→ <b>slyšenje</b> (hearing)
<b>variti</b>	→ <b>vareny</b>	→ <b>varjenje</b> (boiling)
<b>gybnuti</b>	→ <b>gybnuty</b>	→ <b>gybnutje</b> (dying)
<b>dělati</b>	→ <b>dělany</b>	→ <b>dělanje</b> (doing)
<b>viděti</b>	→ <b>vidženy</b>	→ <b>vidženje</b> (seeing)
<b>koristiti</b>	→ <b>koriščeny</b>	→ <b>koriščenje</b> (using)

verbal nouns (gerunds) are used in the same way as in English:

**Govorjenje jest srđbro, molčenje jest zlato.** = Speaking is silver, silence is golden.

## transformation clause↔gerund

see the following table showing how to transform a clause into a gerund. In this way we can compress a whole sentence to a gerund, which can then be used as a part of another clause.

<i>entire clause</i>	<i>verbal noun (gerund)</i>
verb in a personal form	gerund
adverb ( <i>extending verb</i> )	adjective ( <i>extending gerund</i> )
subject of a sentence ( <i>in nominative</i> )	attribute in genitive with preposition <b>od</b> ( <i>from</i> )
object of a sentence ( <i>in accusative</i> )	attribute in genitive without any preposition or possessive pronoun
adverbial part in some case and with some preposition	attribute in the same case and with the same preposition

examples:

**(Ja) pišu pismo.**

I write a letter. - *normal clause*

**moje pisanje pisma**

my writing of a letter - *gerund with transformed subject (ja) and object (pismo)*.

**Jesi li viděl moje pisanje pisma?**

Did you see the letter I wrote? - *gerund used as an object in another clause*

**(Ty) čitaješ dobro.**

You are reading well. - *normal clause*

**dobro čitanje od tebe**

your good reading - *gerund with transformed subject (ty) and adverb (dobro)*.

**Bog čuděsno iztvoříše (pf.) člověka.**

God miraculously created a man. - *normal clause*

**čuděsno iztvořenje člověka od Boga**

miraculous creation of a man by God. - *gerund with transformed subject (Bog), object (člověk) and adverb (čuděsno)*.

**Věruju v čuděsno iztvořenje člověka od Boga.**

I believe in the miraculous creation of man by God. - *the same gerund used as an object in another clause*.

## adjectival participles

Neoslavonic edition of Interslavic has a total of four participles having adjectival behavior (e.g. gender, number and cases in the same way as ordinary adjectives). One of them is already known – the *passive participle*. But there are two passive participles: One is related to the past tense, the second is related to the present tense. The same symmetry stands for both active participles. Please remember these symmetries:

1. All past-tense adjectival participles are made from the infinitive. There is only one pattern for the past-tense adjectival participles - both for passive and active.
2. All present-tense related participles are made from the present-time stem. Symmetrical to the vowels in the present tense conjugation, there are two patterns of present-tense adjectival participles both for passive and active.

*table of adjective participles*

	<i>active (soft adj. pattern)</i>	<i>passive (hard adj. pattern)</i>
<i>present -eš pattern</i>	<b>-uči, -a, -e ...</b>	<b>-emy, -a, -o ...</b>
<i>present -iš pattern</i>	<b>-eči, -a, -e ...</b>	<b>-imy, -a, -o ...</b>
<i>universal past pattern</i>	<b>-vši, -a, -e ...</b>	<b>-ny, -a, -o ... or -ty, -a, -o ... *</b>

\* rules for selecting **-ny** or **-ty** with corresponding vowel have been already described in the previous chapter on passive voice at page 90.

Note that English has only two participles: *present active* and *past passive*. This means that the English speaker will need to take care, that there are four participles having two tenses for both active and passive participle.

Examples of passive participles:

adjectival participles of the verb **pi-ti, pij-u, pij-eš, ...**,  
**pi-l, ...** (to drink, **-eš** pattern)

	<i>active</i>	<i>passive</i>
<i>present</i>	<b>pij-uči,-a,-e ...</b>	<b>pij-emy,-a,-o ...</b>
<i>past</i>	<b>pi-vši,-a,-e ...</b>	<b>p-i-ty,-a,-o ...</b>

adjectival participles of the verb **rabota-ti, rabotaj-u, rabotaj-eš, ...**,  
**rabota-l, ...** (to drink, **-eš** pattern)

	<i>active</i>	<i>passive</i>
<i>present</i>	<b>rabotaj-uči,-a,-e ...</b>	<b>rabotaj-emy,-a,-o ...</b>
<i>past</i>	<b>rabota-vši,-a,-e ...</b>	<b>rabota-ny,-a,-o ...</b>

adjectival participles of the verb **vari-ti, var-ju, var-iš, ...**,  
**vari-l, ...** (to boil, to cook, **-iš** pattern)

	<i>active</i>	<i>passive</i>
<i>present</i>	<b>var-eči,-a,-e ...</b>	<b>var-imy,-a,-o ...</b>
<i>past</i>	<b>vari-vši,-a,-e ...</b>	<b>varje-ny,-a,-o ...</b>

examples of passive participles:

**Tuto jest najpijemo pivo v našej krajině.** = This is the most drunk beer in our country.  
(this is the present passive participle, because we speak about drinking in the present time)

**Moja butylka jest izpita.** = My bottle is drunk.  
(this is the past passive participle, because now my bottle is empty)

**Hočeš li jesti varjeno meso?** = Do you want to eat boiled meat?  
(this is the past passive participle, because meat has been boiled before our present time)

examples of active participles:

**Rabotajući člověk ne imaje svobodno vrème.** = A working man has no free time.  
(this is the present active participle - a man is working now, in the present)

**Na stolu jest vareča voda.** = There is boiling water on the table.  
(this is the present active participle - water is boiling now, in the present)

**Prosimo, davajte dorabotavše električske pribory do ekoličnog odpada.**  
Please, put "old, used" electrical appliances in the ecologic waste.  
(this is the past active participle - appliances have finished their working life)

## adverbial participles, clause transformation to adverbial participle

Adverbial participles are similar to verbal nouns (gerunds). Both represent some process using different grammatical category (e.g. as a noun or as an adverb).

Adverbial participles are very useful in situations when we want to incorporate one clause to another clause, if both clauses have the same subject. An adverbial participle behaves as an ordinary adverb and can be semantically interpreted as the second auxiliary/subordinate verb to the main superordinate verb of the same sentence.

There are two adverbial participles: present and past. Adverbial participles are made from *active* adjectival participles only by simple endings modification as follows:

### *adverbial participles*

<i>present -eš pattern</i>	<b>-uč</b>
<i>present -iš pattern</i>	<b>-eč</b>
<i>universal past pattern</i>	<b>-v</b>

*note that these participles (as well as ordinary adverbs) do not have gender, number and cases*

Example of the present adverbial participle:

1<sup>st</sup> (superordinate) clause:

**Redaktor slyší šum aut na ulici.** An editor hears the noise of cars on the street.

2<sup>nd</sup> (subordinate) clause:

**Redaktor piše članok do novin.** An editor is writing an article for newspapers.

Both clauses have the same subject.

We can merge them into the one complex sentence as follows:

**Redaktor pišuč članok do novin slyší šum aut na ulici.**

An editor (when writing an article for newspapers) hears the noise of cars on the street.

The same sentence moved to the past time:

**Redaktor pišuč članok do novin slyšel šum aut na ulici.**

An editor (when writing an article for news.) heard the noise of cars on the street.

The same example of the past adverbial participle:

1<sup>st</sup> (superordinate) clause:

**Redaktor slyší šum aut na ulici.**

An editor hears the noise of cars on the street.

2<sup>nd</sup> (subordinate) clause:

**Redaktor dopisal članok do novin.**

An editor wrote (e.g. completed writing) an article for newspapers.

Both clauses have the same subject.

We can merge them into the only one sentence as follows:

**Redaktor dopisav članok do novin slyší šum aut na ulici.**

An editor (after writing an article for the newspapers) hears the noise of cars on the street.

The same sentence moved to the past time:

**Redaktor dopisav članok do novin slyšel šum aut na ulici.**

An editor (after writing an article for the newspapers) heard the noise of cars on the street.



# 17. conjunctions, particles and interjections

## conjunctions

A conjunction is a part of speech that connects two words, phrases or clauses together. Conjunctions are non-inflected and are used in exactly the same way as in English. Learn the most used Interslavic conjunctions from this table:

<i>conjunctive</i>	<b>i</b>	and
	<b>ni ... ni ...</b>	neither ... nor ...
<i>disjunctive</i>	<b>ili</b>	(either) or
	<b>i ili</b>	or (logically)
<i>contradicted</i>	<b>ale, no</b>	but
<i>causal</i>	<b>bo, zatože</b>	because
	<b>da</b>	in order to/that
<i>referential</i>	<b>že</b>	that

Coupling clauses can also be referenced by various reference, demonstrative and interrogative pronouns, numerals and adverbs (e.g. **iže**, **ktorý**, **koliko**, **kde**, ...) that can be in any case in order to connect the main concepts between the superordinate and the subordinate clause.

examples:

**hlěb i vino**  
bread and wine

**ni cěsarja ni kralja**  
neither any emperor nor any king

**Hočete li piti pivo ili vino?**  
Do you want to drink beer or wine? (either beer or wine)

**Dobro to myslíš, ale ne jest to možno.**  
You mean it well, but it is not possible.

**Išel jesm kupovati do trgu, bo doma ne bylo nikako jedenje.**  
I went for shopping at the market, because there was nothing to eat at home.

**Ne hoču auto, v ktorom jest slabý motor.**  
I do not want a car, in which the engine is weak (a car with low power engine).  
(pronoun with preposition **v ktorom** makes the conjunction)

## particles

A particle is a special part of speech, which complements the word or clause by some additional information detail. We already learned the particle **li**, which changes the verb from the indicative mode to the interrogative mode, and the particles **da**, **ne**. Here is the table of the most used Neoslavonic particles:

<i>agreeing</i>	<b>da</b>	yes
	<b>ej</b>	yes, of course, eh, yea
<i>disagreeing</i>	<b>ne</b>	no, not
<i>querying</i>	<b>ako ... , potom ... , inako ... .</b> <b>li</b>	if ..., then ..., else ... . (querying verbs)
	<b>ubo</b>	thus, therefore, hence
	<b>ale</b>	however
<i>emphasizing</i>	<b>navyše</b>	moreover
	<b>obače</b>	despite of, yet, notwithstanding

examples:

**Ako izjutra bude dobro vrěme, potom ne hoču ostati v domu.**

If the weather will be good tomorrow, then I do not want to stay at home.

**Esperanto imaje prostu grammatiku. Obače važi, že to ne jest znajemy jezyk.**

Esperanto has a simple grammar, but it is not a known language.

**Ej, to jest pravda!**

Oh yes/yea, it is true!

note:

Slavic languages often replace the querying particle **ako** (or similar) by a verb in querying mode (e.g. **bude li dobro vrěme**, ...). Remember that this style has the same meaning as the standard **ako ... .**

## **interjections**

An interjection or an exclamation is a non-inflected word used to express an emotion or sentiment on the part of the speaker. They are for example **oh!** = oh!, **uva!** = lo!, see!, behold!

example:

**Oh, to ne jest možno!** = Oh, this is not possible!

Moreover, any direct speech closed within talking marks (for example « ... ») is semantically considered as an interjection.

example:

**«Dobro jesmo!» kazal tamtoj člověk.**

"We are all right" said that man.

**Žaba «plesk!» skočila do vody.**

A frog "splash!" jumped into the water.

## a joke

## TELEFON

Dědko telefonuje do doma, i telefon bere maly Ivanek.

Dědko:

«Zdravej! Prošu, daj mi mamku!»

Ivanek slabym glasom odgovorivaje:

«Ja ne mogu, mamka jest v kuhnji i mnogo plače.»

Dědko:

«Dobro, daj mi otca!»

Ivanek iznovo slabo odgovorivaje:

«Ja ne mogu, otec jest takože v kuhnji i mnogo kriči.»

Dědko:

«Spokojno, daj mi babku!»

Ivanek:

«Babku takože ne mogu. Ona je s mamkoju i plače.»

Dědko nervozno:

«Prošu Tebe, jest li u Vas ješće někto vzrastly?»

Ivanek:

«Da, policija tu je.»

Dědko kriči do telefona:

«Bože! I čto u Vas dělaje policija?»

Ivanek slabym glasom odgovorivaje:

«Oni mně iskajut.»

**dědko** (*m.*) a grandfather, granddad

**Ivanek** little Ivan (personal name)

**telefon** (*m.*) a phone

**telefonovati, telefonuj-eš** (*v. impf.*) call

**dom** (*m.*) a house

**brati, ber-eš** (*v.*) to take

**maly** (*adj.*) small

**zdravej!** (*int.*) hi!

**prositi, pros-iš** (*v.*) please

**dati, daš** (*v. pf.*) give

**dělati, dělaj-eš** (*v. pf.*) do

**mamka** (*f.*) a mother, mummy

**plakati, plač-eš** (*v.*) cry

**slaby** (*adj.*) weak

**glas** (*m.*) a voice

**odgovorivati, odgovorivaj-eš** (*v. impf.*)

answer

**otec** (*m.*) a father

**takože** (*adv.*) too, as well

**iznovo** (*adv.*) again

**kuhnja** (*f.*) a kitchen

**mnogo** (*adv.*) a lot

**kričati, krič-iš** (*v. impf.*) to shout, to scream

**spokojno** (*adv.*) well-content, cheerfully

**nervozno** (*adv.*) nervously

**babka** (*f.*) a grandmother, granny

**ješće** (*adv.*) yet more

**vzrastly** (*adj.*) adult

**policija** (*f.*) police

**Bog, Bože!** (*m.*) the God

**iskati, iskaj-eš** (*v. impf.*) to search, to look for

## 18. sentences with coordinate and subordinate clauses, writing commas

### coordinate clauses

A clause has a coordinate relationship when it has the same information without any dependence to the other clause. Sentences with coordinate clauses are created easily by using conjunctions or particles between particular clauses. Here they are:

<i>conjunctive</i>	<b>i</b> <b>ni ... ni ...</b>	and neither ... nor ...
<i>disjunctive</i>	<b>ili</b> <b>i ili</b>	(either) or or (logically)
<i>contradicted</i>	<b>ale, no</b>	But
<i>causal</i>	<b>bo, zatože</b> <b>da</b>	because in order to/that
<i>implicative</i>	<b>ako ... , potom ... , inako ...</b>	if ..., then ..., else ...

examples:

**Včera je byla velika zima, i my jesmo ostali doma.**

Yesterday it was very cold, and we stayed home.

**Budete li letěti (samoletom), ili hočete idti autom?**

Will you fly (by plane), or do you want to go by car?

**Jesmo se učili Esperanto, ale ne byl to znajemy jezyk.**

We learned Esperanto, but it was not a well-known language.

**Učihmo Esperanto, ale ne běše to znajemy jezyk.**

We learned Esperanto, but it was not a well-known language.

**Učimo se govoriti medžuslovjanski, bo hočemo razumiti vsim Slovjanam.**

We learn to speak Interslavic, because we want to understand all Slavic people.

**Hočemo, da imate dobro vrěme!**

We want you to have good weather!

**Ako bude dobro vrěme, potom idemo do prirody.**

If there will be the good weather, then we will go to the countryside.

## subordinate clauses

Two clauses have the subordinate relationship when one clause (e.g. subordinate) has dependent content on the other clause (e.g. superordinate). This means, that subordinate clauses cannot stand alone without their control elements contained in superordinate clauses.

In Neoslavonic edition of Interslavic, the subordinate clause must always begin with some referential grammatical element, which represents something from its corresponding superordinate clause. This can be done by:

1. referential conjunction **že** = that. Here the entire subordinate clause refers to the *verb* from the superordinate clause.
2. relative pronoun **iže, jegože, jemuže, jejže, ...** (see chapter 7 on page 60 for details). Here the relative pronoun refers to some *noun, numeral* or *pronoun* from the superordinate clause.
3. any interrogative pronoun, numeral or adverb (e.g. **kto**, **koliko**, **kogda, ...** on page 63). Here the interrogative pronoun, numeral or adverb refers to some *noun, numeral, adverb or adverbial part* from the superordinate clause.

examples:

**Govorju, že to ne jest dobro.**

I say, that this is not good. (**govorju** ⇔ **že**)

**Kto jest tamtoj člověk, kto**ry imaje zeleno auto?

Who is that man, who has a green car? (**člověk** ⇔ **kto**)

**Ne hoču auto, v ktorom jest slaby motor.**

I do not want a car, which has the low power engine. (**auto** ⇔ **ktorom**)

**Moj prijatelj, jegože mlada žena tamo ide, jest bolestny.**

My friend, whose young wife is going there, is sick. (**prijatelj** ⇔ **jegože**)

**Ne znaju točno, koliko imajemo ljudij.**

I do not know, how many people we have. (**točno** ⇔ **koliko**)

**Idemo do prirody, kogda je dobro vrème.**

We will go to the countryside, when there is good weather.

(**do prirody** ⇔ **kogda**)

## writing commas

Interslavic is an auxiliary language, and therefore has no strict rules for writing commas between clauses. Thus, you can use the same rules that you know from your native language. But there is one simple rule that would be good to know and use:

*Each clause having its own verb and other elements (e.g. subject, object, adverbial parts, ...) should be separated from other clauses with a comma.*

This rule is followed in all examples in this book:

**Idemo do prirody, kogda bude dobro vrěme.** - here we need one comma.

First clause = **Idemo do prirody.**

Second clause = **Kogda bude dobro vrěme.**

**Moj prijatelj, jegože mlada žena tamo ide, jest bolestny.** - here we need two commas

First clause = **Moj prijatelj jest bolestny.**

Second clause = **Jegože mlada žena tamo ide.**



## **19. non-conforming attributes, transformations, capitalization**

A conforming attribute is consistent with the object (noun, pronoun, numeral, ...) in case, gender and number, and changes in both these categories according to its corresponding object. It is usually *before* its object and is most often represented by an adjective or an adjective pronoun.

example:

**dobry** (N) **člověk** (N),  
**dobrogo** (G) **člověka** (G),  
**dobromu** (D) **člověku** (D), ... = a good (wo)man/person

### **non-conforming attribute**

A non-conforming attribute is not consistent with the object (noun, pronoun, numeral, ...) in case, gender and number, and keeps its own case regardless of whether its corresponding object changes its cases. It is usually positioned *after* its object and is most often represented by a noun or pronoun in some case with optional preposition.

example:

**člověk** (N) **iz Ameriky** (G),  
**člověka** (G) **iz Ameriky** (G),  
**člověku** (D) **iz Ameriky** (G), ... = a (wo)man/person from America

It is obvious that both a conforming and a non-conforming attribute can be added to the same object. (e.g. **dobromu** (D) **člověku** (D) **iz Ameriky** (G))

## **conversion of the subject to clause with verb byti = to be**

In some situations we need to convert (compress) an entire clause into a unique element for use in another clause. Original clause components in the nominative are converted to the conforming attribute and other non-nominative clause components are converted to the non-conforming attributes.

example:

**Muž jest dobry. Toj muž jest iz Ameriky. Vidimo tu togo muža.**  
The man is good. This man is from America. We can see this man here.

first two clauses are transformed to two elements of the third clause:

**Vidimo tu dobrego muža iz Ameriky.** = We can see a good man from America.

Passive clauses are transformed in the same way as other clauses having the verb **byti** = to be. The only difference is that a performer (process maker) in the instrumental case is transformed to the non-conforming attribute with the preposition **od** + genitive (i.e. ablative expression).

example:

**Slovo jest pisano Bogom (I).** = The word is written by God.

is transformed to:

**slovo od Boga (G)** = the word by/from the God

## **conversion of the subject to clause with another verb than byti (to be)**

A verb of this clause is converted to the active adjectival participle of the subject. Other clause components are converted to the non-conforming attributes.

example:

**Žena piše pismo. Ta žena sedi doma.** = A woman writes a letter. This woman is sitting at home.

first clause transformed to an element of the second clause:

**Žena pišuča pismo sedi doma.** = A woman (writing a letter) is sitting at home.

## conversion of the entire clause

When we need to transform an entire clause, we can transform the verb into a verbal noun and other clause elements to non-conforming attributes. Then we need:

1. The subject of the original clause in the nominative transformed to the non-conforming attribute with the preposition **od** + genitive (e.g. ablative).
2. The object of the original clause in the accusative transformed to the non-conforming attribute in genitive.
3. Adverbs transformed into adjectives of the verbal nouns.

example:

**Moj brat dobro rysovaje naš dom.**

The brother draws our house well.

when we apply these transformations:

**moj brat (N) → od mojego brata (G)**

**dobro (adv.) → dobro (adj.)**

**rysovaje (v.) → rysovanje (noun)**

**naš dom (A) → našego doma (G)**

we can transform the original clause into an extended verbal noun as follows:

**Dobro rysovanje našego doma od mojego brata.**

## multiple attribute

Multiple attribute is a very simple matter. This is about more elements in the same case, gender and number being repeated several times in some sequence.

example:

**Kto jest toj filosof učitelj naš?**

Who is that philosopher (and) teacher (and) ours?

## **capitalization**

Interslavic is an auxiliary language, and therefore it has no strict rules for capitalization. Thus, you can use the same rules that you know from your native language. But there is one simple rule that would be good to follow:

*Each unique subject/object should have first word of its name capitalized.*

examples:

**Slovačska republika** = Slovak Republic

**Europska unija** = European Union

**Naum Ohridsky** = Naum of Ohrid, because «Ohrid» is also an independent name.

## 20. word formation, diminution

### Latin and Greek words in Interslavic

1. Latin and Greek words are written in phonetic orthography with only **-i-** but respecting original **-ch-** and **-th-**. Latin and Greek masculine and neuter suffixes of the nominative case are used in Interslavic as well, but are extended in other declination cases by slavic suffices.

**filozofija** (*f. N*), **filozofije** (*f. G*), ... (declension pattern **duša**)  
= philosophy (greek: φιλοσοφία)  
**theatro** (*n. N*), **theatra** (*n. G*), ... (declension pattern **sělo**)  
= theater (greek: θεάτρο)  
**kosmos** (*m. N*), **kosmosa** (*m. G*), ... (declension pattern **grad**)  
= space, universe (greek: κόσμος)  
**kapitalizm** (*m. N*), **kapitalizma** (*m. G*), ... (declension pattern **grad**)  
= capitalism  
**architektura** (*f. N*), **architektury** (*f. G*), ... (declension pattern **žena**)  
= architecture  
**problem** (*m. inanim. N*), **problema** (*m. inanim. G*), ... (declension pattern **grad**)  
= problem (greek: προβλήμα *n.*)  
**sistem** (*m. inanim. N*), **sistema** (*m. inanim. G*), ... (declension pattern **grad**)  
= system (greek: σύστημα *n.*)  
**fizika** (*f. N*), **fiziky** (*f. G*), ... (declension pattern **žena**)  
= physics (greek: φυσική *f.*)

2. Latin words ending by a consonant **-as**, **-atis** are masculine.

**fakultet** (*m. inanim.*) = a faculty, (latin: facultas, facultatis *f.*)  
**univerzitet** (*m. inanim.*) = a university, (latin: universitas, universitatis *f.*)

3. Greek words **-ια** or Latin **-ia** are transformed to feminine **-ija**.  
**filozofija**, **astronomija**, ...

Greek nouns **-η/-ις** or Latin **-a** are transformed to **-a**.  
**baza**, ...

Greek adjectives **-κος** or Latin **-cus** are transformed to palatalized **-sky**.  
**filosofijsky**, **ekonomičsky** (*ekonomika k→č*), ...

Latin **-sio** is transformed to **-zija**.  
**televizija**, ...

Latin **-ssio** is transformed to **-sija**.  
**diskusija** ...

Latin **-tio/-tia** is transformed to **-cija**.  
**gravitacija**, ...

- Latin or Greek voiced **-s-** between vowels is transformed to **-z-**.  
**vaza, baza, fizika, ...**
- Latin or Greek **-ss-** is transformed to **-s-**.  
**masiv, ...**
- Greek **-σμος** or Latin **-smus** is transformed to **-zm**.  
**kapitalizm, ...**
- Greek **-o(v)** or Latin **-um** is transformed to **-um**, Greek **-oç** or Latin **-us** is transformed to **-us, -os**.  
**forum, foruma; korpus, korpusa; kosmos, kosmosa ...**

note some exceptions:

**museum = muzej, muzeja (m.inanim.) theatrum = theatro, theatra (n.)**

- Greek adjective **-στικος** or Latin adjective **-sticus** is transformed to **-stičsky**.  
**kapitalističsky, ...**
- Latin or Greek **-stus, -στος** is transformed to **-st**.  
**kapitalist, ...**

## words from other languages

Words from another Latin-written language should keep their original orthography pronunciation in their original phonetics but follow Interslavic grammar in endings (gender, cases, ...)

examples:

**metro** [metrɔ], **metr-a** [metra], ... (n.) = tube, subway, underground  
**laser** [lɛjzr], **laser-a** [lɛjzra], ... (m.) = laser  
**bypass** [bajpas], **bypass-a** [bajpasa], ... (m.) = bypass

Note, that Cyrillic and Greek orthography traditions are different. These orthographies prefer phonetic style. It is also possible in Interslavic:

examples:

**метро** [metrɔ], **метр-а** [metra], ... (n.) = tube, subway, underground  
**лејзр** [lɛjzr], **лејзр-а** [lɛjzra], ... (m.) = laser  
**бајпас** [bajpas], **байпас-а** [bajpasa], ... (m.) = bypass

**μετρο** [metrɔ], **μετρ-α** [metra], ... (n.) = tube, subway, underground  
**λεϊζρ** [lɛjzr], **λεϊζρ-α** [lɛjzra], ... (m.) = laser  
**μπαϊπας** [bajpas], **μπαϊπασ-α** [bajpasa], ... (m.) = bypass

## **word formation - suffixes**

This matter has already been discussed on page 65. Review it again in order to repeat the set of endings used for the creation adjectives.

Moreover, learn these two endings:

1. **-ica** making a feminine species from something.

example:

**cěsarj** = an emperor → **cěsarica** = an empress.

**glup-y,-a,-o** (*adj.*) = stupid → **glupica** (*N*) = stupid (*noun, f.*)

2. **-ec** (losing **-e-**, see page 37) making a masculine species from something.

example:

**glup-y,-a,-o** (*adj.*) = stupid → **glupec** (*N*), **glupca** (*G*), **glupče!** (*V*) = stupid (*noun, m.*)

## **word formation - prefixes**

Interslavic prefixes are made from prepositions. In addition, there are some special prefixes mostly used with verbs, which are not related to any prepositions (see page 92 for details about the aspect of verbs).

**vz-**, **voz-** (to begin/launch the process)

**do-** (to finish/complete the process and separate something)

Other prefixes are regularly made from prepositions. One-consonant prefixes are amended by the vowel "**o**" if they are connected to a word beginning with a consonant.

example:

**so-vršiti**, **so-vrš-iš**, ... (to culminate, to improve, to collect, to make perfect)

Other prefixes are made directly from the preposition without any change.

examples:

**od-běgati**: **od-běž-iš**, ... (run out)

**pro-dati**, **pro-daš**, ... (to sell)

**na-ložiti**, **na-lož-iš**, ... (to load, to put down)

**pro-slaviti**, **pro-slav-iš**, ... (to celebrate, to proclaim)

## diminution

Diminution of words is quite common for all Slavic languages. By diminution we can express either smaller or younger species of something/somebody or our some kind of familiar relationship to something/somebody.

Interslavic supports the very basic common basis of this huge Slavic system. Please learn these only endings:

1. **-ek, -iček** = masculine diminution.

example:

**slon** = an elephant

**slonek** = a little/young/familiar elephant

**sloniček** = a very little/young/familiar elephant

2. **-ka, -ička** = feminine diminution.

example:

**krava** = a cow

**kravka** = a little/young/familiar cow

**kravička** = a very little/young/familiar cow

3. **-ko, ičko** = neuter diminution

example:

**děte** = a child

**dětko** = a little/young/familiar child

**dětičko** = a very little/young/familiar child

**tele** = a calf

**teletko** = a little/young/familiar calf

(syllable **-et-** is added due to the declension T-pattern **tele, telete**, see page 52)

**brat** = a brother

**bratko** = a little/young/familiar brother (*m.* but declined as *sělo* in singular)

# transition words

This page is made from the texts of Robert Harris and the Writing Center, University of Wisconsin - Madison applied to the Interslavic language.

To improve your language skills you need to make sure, that your ideas stick together and that the gap between them is bridged smoothly. This is by using *transition words and phrases* that help bring two ideas together. Certain words help you to continue an idea, indicate a shift of thought or contrast, or sum up a conclusion. See the following list of words to find those that will pull your thoughts together.

## transition of logic

Transition of logic consist of words or phrases that convey "logical intent": that is, they show the logical connection between two ideas. Since there are several possible logical connections (such as time, purpose, contrast), there are several categories of transitions of logic. The table below lists many of these transitions, arranged by category and listed as milder or stronger. (Note that there is some double listing, because of the different ways words can be used.) Some hints for use:

- Transition become stronger when they are the first word in a sentence, milder when they are moved a few words into the sentence.
- Keep this list handy while you write, until the words come automatically.

This matter has been already discussed in chapter 18. - sentences with coordinate and subordinate clauses at page 105. Moreover, you definitely need to remember words from the table in chapter 11. - adverbs and idioms at page 78.

Here you can see the most used transition words and phrases. Before using a particular transitional word from this table, be sure you understand its exact meaning and usage completely and try to translate all words, which this glue is made from.

<i>addition</i>	and	<b>i</b>
	or	<b>ili</b>
	neither ... nor ...	<b>ni ... ni ...</b>
	moreover, in addition	<b>navyše</b>
	further, furthermore, even more	<b>ještě (adv.)</b>
	also, too	<b>takože</b>
	besides	<b>kromě (adv.)</b>
	again	<b>iznovu (adv.)</b>
	first, in the first place	<b>izprva, v prvyh</b>
	second, secondly	<b>v vtoryh</b>
	third	<b>v tretjih</b>
	finally	<b>nakonec (adv.)</b>
	next	<b>dalje (adv.)</b>
	last	<b>poslědno (adv.)</b>

<i>time</i>	while, when after, afterwards during next immediately now, this time later earlier soon sometimes following never always whenever once simultaneously subsequently	<b>kogda</b> ( <i>adv.</i> ) <b>potom</b> ( <i>adv.</i> ), <b>poslje</b> ( <i>prep. G</i> ) <b>v tečenji ... G</b> <b>dalje</b> ( <i>adv.</i> ) <b>sejčasno</b> ( <i>adv.</i> ), <b>neposrđeno</b> ( <i>adv.</i> ) <b>sejčas</b> ( <i>adv.</i> ), <b>nyně</b> ( <i>adv.</i> ) <b>pozdněje</b> ( <i>adv.</i> ) <b>raněje</b> ( <i>adv.</i> ) <b>skoro</b> ( <i>adv.</i> ) <b>několikokrat</b> ( <i>adv.</i> ) <b>slědujuč</b> ( <i>adv.</i> ) <b>nikogda</b> ( <i>adv.</i> ) <b>vsegda</b> ( <i>adv.</i> ) <b>někogda</b> ( <i>adv.</i> ) <b>jedin raz</b> ( <i>adv.</i> ) <b>jednočasno</b> ( <i>adv.</i> ) <b>s ... I</b> <b>postupno</b> ( <i>adv.</i> ) <b>od ... G</b>
<i>place</i>	here beyond wherever neighboring on nearby opposite to above below	<b>tu, tudu, tamo</b> ( <i>adv.</i> ) <b>za</b> ( <i>prep. G</i> ) <b>někde, někamo</b> ( <i>adv.</i> ) <b>slěd</b> ( <i>prep. G</i> ), <b>sosědno</b> ( <i>adv.</i> ) <b>s ... I</b> <b>bliz</b> ( <i>prep. G</i> ) <b>protiv</b> ( <i>prep. D</i> ) <b>nad</b> ( <i>prep. A,I</i> ) <b>pod</b> ( <i>prep. A,I</i> )
<i>exemplification</i>	to illustrate, to demonstrate for instance, for example specifically e.g.	<b>ukazajuč</b> ( <i>adv.</i> ) ... <i>A</i> <b>napriměr</b> ( <i>adv.</i> ) <b>specifično</b> ( <i>adv.</i> ) <b>od ... G</b> <b>napr. (napriměr)</b>
<i>comparison</i>	in the same way in like manner, likewise similarly	<b>rovno s ... I, rovno kako ... N</b> <b>podobno od ... G</b> <b>podobno</b> ( <i>adv.</i> )
<i>contrast</i>	but however on the contrary on the other hand, otherwise despite of, yet, notwithstanding vice versa, backwards	<b>ale, no</b> <b>jedinako, medžutym</b> <b>na razliku od ... G</b> <b>iz drugoj strany ... G</b> <b>obače</b> <b>povratno</b> ( <i>adv.</i> ) <b>od ... G</b>
<i>clarification</i>	that is to say i.e., that is in other words, to rephrase it to clarify, to explain thus, therefore, hence	<b>takо rěčeno</b> <b>to jest</b> <b>drugymi slovami</b> <b>na objasnenje ... G</b> <b>bo, ubo</b>

<i>cause</i>	because since on account of let us assume that for reason	<b>zatože</b> <b>od</b> (prep. <i>G</i> ) <b>radi</b> (prep. <i>G</i> ) <b>pr��dpokladajmo, �e ... N</b> <b>po pri��in�� ... G</b>
<i>effect</i>	thus, therefore, hence consequently accordingly as a result	<b>bo, ubo</b> <b>sl��d</b> (prep. <i>G</i> ) <b>rovno s ... I</b> <b>v rezultatu ... G</b>
<i>purpose</i>	in order that for this purpose	<b>da, da by</b> <b>v smyslu ... G</b>
<i>qualification</i>	almost never always maybe, perhaps probably frequently although	<b>bliz</b> (prep. <i>G</i> ), <b>nemalo</b> (adv.) <b>nikogda</b> (adv.) <b>vsegda</b> (adv.) <b>mo��no</b> (adv.) <b>pravd��podobno</b> (adv.) <b>��esto</b> (adv.), <b>frekventirano</b> (adv.) <b>hotj</b> (adv.)
<i>intensification</i>	indeed, sure of course without doubt, undoubtedly yes by all means certainly	<b>ej</b> <b>jasno</b> (adv.) <b>bezsumno</b> (adv.) <b>da</b> <b>v vsih zna��enjah ... G</b> <b>istino</b> (adv.), <b>bezu��ovno</b> (adv.)
<i>concession</i>	to be sure it is true of course obviously	<b>uv��rjeno</b> (adv.) <b>pravda jest, �e ...</b> <b>jasno</b> (adv.) <b>o��evidno</b> (adv.)
<i>summary</i>	to sum up, in summary, together in short, in brief to dissolve	<b>vkup��</b> (adv.) <b>kratko</b> (adv.) <b>na razr��senje ... G</b>
<i>conclusion</i>	to conclude finally	<b>na zaklju��enje ... G</b> <b>nakonec</b> (adv.)

## **transition of thought**

Transition of thought consist of words that help maintain the continuity of thought from one sentence or paragraph to the next. Transition of thought are produced by the following techniques:

### **pronouns**

Follow a noun with a *personal pronoun* in order to continue the same subject and a *possessive pronoun* in order to move to something related to the original subject. See chapter 7. for details.

**Fido spi. On jest dobry pes. Jego dom jest pod jablonjeju.**

Fido is asleep. He is a good dog. His house is under the apple tree.

Personal pronouns are **ja, ty, on, ona, ono, my, vy, oni**.

Possessive pronouns are **moj, tvoj, naš, vaš**

and possesive genitives made from **on, ona, ono, oni** are **jego, jej, jeho, jih**.

### **keyword repetition**

Repeat the word around which the discussion is focusing.

**Praga imaje mnogo historičnyh pamětnikov. Tute pamětniky sut stare domy, mosty, theatra i hramy. Najstarší pražsky pamětník jest iz romanskoj ery.**

Prague has a lot of historical monuments. These monuments are old houses, bridges, theaters and churches. The oldest monument is from the Romanesque period.

### **synonyms**

A synonym is a word that means nearly the same as another word. This is very important for your communication in Interslavic. Using synonyms will help you convince that your partners really understand what you are saying.

**Vaše auto jest lěpo. Ale myslim, že taky voz jest mnogo skupy.**

Your car is very nice. But I think, that this kind of vehicle is very expensive.

### **demonstrative pronouns**

Use demonstrative pronouns in order to refer something already existing in the previous clause. Demonstrative pronouns are **toj, ta, to, ti, te** and their derivatives **tutoj, tamtoj, ...**. See chapter 3. for details.

**Moj brat imaje veliky dom. Kako stary jest toj dom?**

My brother has a big house. How old is this house?

# Conclusion

Congratulations! You have arrived at the end of this book. You have been fully introduced to the Interslavic language. Now you should be ready to try it out in practice.

Remember that Interslavic is only an auxiliary and artificial language. Don't be shy to say that you are learning Interslavic and wish to use it in discussion. Speak slowly and try to adjust yourself to your speakers. If they do not understand you, repeat the same idea in another way using other words or non-shortened grammatical forms (e.g. verb conjugation or gradation of adjectives and adverbs). If you are not sure about what your speaking partners are saying, ask them to repeat themselves again using different words. And don't be afraid to ask about the words they use.

Slavs are friendly people, there is no need to pretend to them that you are speaking in one of their natural languages. For example, a Bulgarian may think that you are speaking Croatian or Slovak or some language like those. Tell them the truth – that you are speaking in an artificial Interslavic language. Slavic people will be happy about your talking in this language, which sounds so similar to their own speech. Explain to your partners what this language really is and what is its background.

Moreover, remember that Slavic languages each have their own local specifics – their own "jargon", which is useful for you to know. For example, it is not suitable to use some Interslavic concept that is not used in the local language of your speaking partners. The table on the next page shows these differences in simplified form.

We wish you the best of fun and success in your Interslavic communication!

**differences among Slavic languages from Neoslavonic perspective**

	RUS	UA	RUE*	BY	PL	WEN*	CZ	SK	SLO	HR	BiH	MNE	SRB	MK	BG
<i>alphabet</i>	cyr	cyr	cyr	cyr, lat	lat	lat	lat	lat	lat	lat	lat, cyr	cyr, lat	cyr	cyr	cyr
<i>cases</i>	yes	yes	yes	yes	yes	yes	yes	yes	yes	yes	yes	yes	no	no	no
<i>vocative</i>	no	yes	no	yes	yes	yes	no	no	yes	yes	yes	yes	yes	yes	yes
<i>definite article</i>	no	no	no	no	no	no	no	no	no	no	no	no	yes	yes	yes
<i>di, ti, ni</i>	soft	soft	soft	soft	soft	soft	soft	soft	hard	hard	hard	hard	hard	hard	hard
<i>de, te, ne</i>	soft	hard	soft	soft	hard	hard	soft	hard	hard	hard	hard	hard	hard	hard	hard
<i>i/y</i>	и/ы	и/и	и/ы	и/ы	и/у	и/у	и/у	и/у	i/y	i/y	i only	i only	i only	i only	i only
ě	e	i	e	ie	ě	ě	ie	e	ije	e	e	e	я (=ja)	я (=ja)	я (=ja)
e	ə	e	ə	e	e	e	e	e	e	e	e	e	e	e	e
<i>nasal vowels</i>	no	no	no	yes	no	no	no	no	no	no	no	no	no	no	no
<i>syllabic r, l</i>	no	no	no	no	yes	yes	yes	yes	yes	yes	yes	yes	yes	yes	yes
<i>future tense</i>	budu	budu	budu	budu	będę	budu	budu	budu	budu	(ho)ću	(ho)ću	(ho)ću	(ho)ću	(ho)ću	šte
<i>past tenses</i>	L-only	L-only	L-only	L-only	yes	L-only	L-only	yes	yes	yes	yes	yes	yes	yes	yes
<i>dual</i>	no	no	no	no	yes	no	no	yes	no	no	no	no	no	no	no

# Appendix

## Interslavic conversation

Learn to say **hello**, **good bye**, **thank you**, and other useful words and phrases in Interslavic language. This conversation is a useful tool for English-speaking business and leisure travelers. Enjoy it!

### greetings

Welcome!

**Dobro došli!**

Hello!

**Zdravej!**

**Zdravejte!** (*politely or pl.*)

How are you?

**Kako jesi?**

**Kako jeste?** (*politely or pl.*)

How do you do?, What do you do?

**Čto děláješ?**

**Čto dělajete?** (*politely or pl.*)

I am fine.

**Dobro mi je.**

Nice to see you again.

**Raduju se, že Tebe znova vidím.**

**Raduju se, že Vas znova vidím.** (*politely or pl.*)

Long time no see.

**Davno jesmo se ne viděli.**

Good morning.

**Dobro jutro.** (*earlier*)

**Dobry den.** (*later*)

Good afternoon.

**Dobry den.**

Good evening.

**Dobry večer.**

Good night.

**Dobru noč.** (*in accusative*)

Goodbye.

**Dovidženja.**

Good luck!

**Mnogo ščestja!**

See you soon!

**Da se skoro vidimo!**

Congratulations!

**Čestim!**

**Gratulacija!**

Say hi to ... for me!

**Kaži pozdrav ... (dative) od mene!**

**Kažite pozdrav ... (dative) od mene!**

### wish someone something

Cheers! Good health!

**Na zdravje!**

Have a nice day!

**Da imaješ blagý den!**

**Da imajete blagý den!** (*politely or pl.*)

Bon appetit! Enjoy your meal!

**Dobry vkus!**

Bon voyage!

**Ščestny put!**

Enjoy!

**Uživaj!**

**Uživajte!** (*politely or pl.*)

Merry Christmas!

**Veselu koledu!** (*in accusative*)

**Hristos se rodi!** (*idiom*)

Happy New Year!  
**Blagu Novu Godinu!** (*in accusative*)

Happy Easter!  
**Hristos vozkres!** (*idiom*)

*answer to "Happy Easter!"*  
**V istinu vozkres!**

Happy Birthday!  
**Mnoge lěta!**

## asking for help

Please!

**Prošu!**

**Prosím!**

I want ... .

**Hoču** ... (*accusative or infinitive verb*) .

I need ... .

**Trěba mi je** ... (*accusative or inf. verb*) .

I'm looking for ... .

**Iskaju** ... (*accusative*) .

Thanks!

**Hvala!**

Thank you!

**Blagodarju!**

**Blagodarim!**

Can I help you?

**Mogu li tobě pomogti?**

**Mogu li vam pomogti?** (*politely or pl.*)

I'm waiting for ... .

**Čakaju** ... (*accusative*) .

Where is the restroom/toilet?

**Kde je toaleta?**

Help!

**Pomoč!**

Help me!  
**Pomagaj mi!**  
**Pomagajte mi!** (*politely or pl.*)

Fire!  
**Požar!**

Call the police!  
**Pozvonj policiju!**  
**Pozvonjte policiju!** (*politely or pl.*)

I need to use the restroom/toilet.  
**Trěba mi je idti na toaletu.**

I feel sick.  
**Čuju se bolestno.**

I need a doctor.  
**Trěba mi je doktora.**

I'm hungry.  
**Jesm gladny.** (*m.*)  
**Jesm gladna.** (*f.*)

I'm thirsty.  
**Jesm žedzny.** (*m.*)  
**Jesm žedzna.** (*f.*)

I want to eat.  
**Hoču jesti.**

I want to drink.  
**Hoču piti.**

## introducing yourself

My name is ... .

**Moje ime je** ... .

What is your name?

**Kako je twoje ime?**

**Kako je vaše ime?** (*politely or pl.*)

Where are you from?

**Odkudu jesi?**

**Odkudu jeste?** (*politely or pl.*)

Where do you live?  
**Kde žijete?**

I live in ... .	<b>Možete li to kazati ješće jedin raz? (politely or pl.)</b>
<b>Žiju v ... (locative) .</b>	
Pleased to meet you.	Please speak more slowly!
<b>Blago mi je tebe viděti.</b>	<b>Prošu, govori pomalo!</b>
<b>Blago mi jest vas viděti. (politely or pl.)</b>	<b>Prošu, govorite pomalo! (politely or pl.)</b>
How is ... ?	Please do not speak so fast!
<b>Kako je ... ?</b>	<b>Prošu, ne govori tako bystro!</b>
Where do you work?	<b>Prošu, ne gorovite tako bystro!</b>
<b>Kde rabotaješ?</b>	(politely or pl.)
<b>Kde rabotajete? (politely or pl.)</b>	
Are You from around here?	Please write it down!
<b>Jesi li městny? (m.)</b>	<b>Prošu, napiši to!</b>
<b>Jesi li městna? (f.)</b>	<b>Prošu, napišite to! (politely or pl.)</b>
<b>Jeste li městni? (politely or pl.)</b>	
How old are You?	Do you speak Interslavic?
<b>Koliko imaješ lět?</b>	<b>Govoriš li medžuslovjansky?</b>
<b>Koliko imajete lět? (politely or pl.)</b>	<b>Govorite li medžuslovjansky?</b>
I am ... years old.	(politely or pl.)
<b>Imaju ... lět.</b>	
What's your phone number?	Do you understand Interslavic?
<b>Kake imaješ číslo telefona?</b>	<b>Razuměješ li medžuslovjansky?</b>
<b>Kake imajete číslo telefona? (politely or pl.)</b>	<b>Razumějete li medžuslovjansky?</b>
My phone number is ... .	(politely or pl.)
<b>Moje číslo je ... .</b>	
What do you like to do?	Yes, a little.
<b>Čto ljubiš dělati?</b>	<b>Da, slabo.</b>
<b>Čto ljubite dělati? (politely or pl.)</b>	
What is your profession?	Do you understand me?
<b>Kaka je tvoja profesija?</b>	<b>Razuměješ li mně?</b>
<b>Kaka jest vaša profesija? (politely or pl.)</b>	<b>Razumějete li mně? (politely or pl.)</b>
Do you like it here ( <i>with us</i> )?	I understand.
<b>Dobro li je tobě u nas?</b>	<b>Razuměju.</b>
<b>Dobro li jest vam u nas? (politely or pl.)</b>	
	I do not understand.
	<b>Ne razuměju.</b>
	Please repeat it!
	<b>Prošu ješće jedin raz!</b>
	Good.
	<b>Dobro.</b>
	Fair.
	<b>Dostatečno.</b>
	Weak.
	<b>Slabo.</b>

## understanding

Can You say it again?  
**Možeš li to kazati ješće jedin raz?**

Just a little.  
**Samo malo.**

Nothing.  
**Ničto.**

I want to talk to you.  
**Hoču s teboju govoriti.**  
**Hoču s vami govoriti.** (*politely or pl.*)

Let us talk later.  
**Budemo govoriti pozdněje.**

How do you say ... in Interslavic?  
**Kako je ... medžuslovjansky?**

I've been learning Interslavic for one month.  
**Učim se medžuslovjansky jedin mesec.**

I like (love) Slavic languages.  
**Ljubim slovjanske jezyky.**

## directions

How can I go to ... please?  
**Prošu, kako mogu idti do ... ?** (*genitive*)

Which way?  
**Kudu?**

This way.  
**Tude.**

Where? (*direction, movement to a place, position*)  
**Kamo?**

Where? (*place, position*)  
**Kde?**

Here.  
**Tu.**

There.  
**Tamo.**

Where is ... ?  
**Kde je ... ?**

Station.  
**Stanica.**

Train.  
**Vlak.**

Bus.  
**Autobus.**

Taxi.  
**Taxi.**

Car.  
**Auto.**

Airplane.  
**Samolet.**

Go straight, left, right, back!  
**Idi prěmo, lěvo, desno, povratno!**  
**Idite prěmo, lěvo, desno, povratno!** (*politely or pl.*)

Then continue ... meters.  
**Potom idi ... metrov.**  
**Potom idite ... metrov.** (*politely or pl.*)

Come with me!  
**Idi s mnoju!**  
**Idite s mnoju!** (*politely or pl.*)

I'm lost.  
**Jesm zabludil.** (*m.*)  
**Jesm zabludila.** (*f.*)

May I come with you?  
**Mogu li idti s teboju?**  
**Mogu li idti s vami?** (*politely or pl.*)

I'll be back.  
**Budu se vratiti.**

<b>time</b>	Friday. <b>Petok.</b>
What time is it?	
<b>Koliko je vr̄emene?</b>	Saturday.
<b>Kaka je časina?</b>	<b>Subota.</b>
It is ... : ... o'clock.	Sunday.
<b>Je ... časin i ... minut.</b>	<b>Nedělja.</b>
<b>Je ... ... .</b>	January. <b>Januar.</b>
I'm running late.	
<b>Idu pozdno.</b>	February. <b>Februar.</b>
When?	March.
<b>Kogda?</b>	<b>Marec.</b>
Today.	April.
<b>Dnes.</b>	<b>April.</b>
Now.	May.
<b>Segda.</b>	<b>Maj.</b>
<b>Nyně.</b>	June.
Tomorrow.	<b>Jun.</b>
<b>Zajutra.</b>	July.
Yesterday.	<b>Jul.</b>
<b>Včera.</b>	August.
Next week.	<b>August.</b>
<b>Sledujuču nedělju.</b>	September.
Last week.	<b>September.</b>
<b>Prošlu nedělju.</b>	October.
Next month.	<b>Október.</b>
<b>Sledujuči mesec.</b>	November.
Last month.	<b>November.</b>
<b>Prošly mesec.</b>	December.
Monday.	<b>December.</b>
<b>Poneděljok.</b>	
Tuesday.	
<b>Vtorok.</b>	
Wednesday.	
<b>Sr̄eda.</b>	
Thursday.	
<b>Četvrtok.</b>	

## **shopping, hotel, restaurant**

I want this.

**Tuto hoču.**

How much is it?

**Koliko to stoji?**

This is a good price.

**To jest dobra cena.**

This is not a good price.

**To ne jest dobra cena.**

This is expensive.

**To jest skupo.**

**To jest drago.**

Bread.

**Hlěb.**

I want to pay.

**Hoču platiti.**

May I pay by card?

**Mogu li platiti karticoju?**

This gentleman will pay for everything.

**Tutoj gospod bude vse platiti.**

This lady will pay for everything.

**Tuta gospoda bude vse platiti.**

I have a room reserved here.

**Imaju tu rezerviranu komnatu.**

Do you have a free room?

**Imajete li svobodnu komnatu? (politely  
or pl.)**

... days.

**dnov.**

Breakfast.

**Jutrenica.**

**Zajutrank.**

Lunch.

**Oběd.**

Dinner.

**Večerja.**

May I have your menu please?

**Prošu, mogu li dostati Vaše menu? (po-  
litely or pl.)**

Soup.

**Supa.**

Drink.

**Pitje.**

## numbers

0	<b>nula</b>
1	<b>jedin</b> ( <i>m.</i> ), <b>jedna</b> ( <i>f.</i> ), <b>jedno</b> ( <i>n.</i> )
2	<b>dva</b> ( <i>m.</i> ), <b>dvě</b> ( <i>f.</i> ), <b>dvě</b> ( <i>n.</i> )
3	<b>tri</b>
4	<b>četyri</b>
5	<b>pet</b>
6	<b>šest</b>
7	<b>sedm</b>
8	<b>osm</b>
9	<b>devet</b>
10	<b>deset</b>
11	<b>jedinnadset</b>
12	<b>dvanadset</b>
13	<b>trinadset</b>
14	<b>četyrinadset</b>
15	<b>petnadset</b>
16	<b>šestnadset</b>
17	<b>sedmnadset</b>
18	<b>osmnadset</b>
19	<b>devetnadset</b>
20	<b>dvadeset</b>
30	<b>trideset</b>
40	<b>četyrideset</b>
50	<b>petdeset</b>
60	<b>šestdeset</b>
70	<b>sedmdeset</b>
80	<b>osmdeset</b>
90	<b>devetdeset</b>
100	<b>sto</b>
200	<b>dvěsto</b>
300	<b>tristo</b>
400	<b>četyristo</b>
500	<b>petsto</b>
600	<b>šeststo</b>
700	<b>sedmsto</b>
800	<b>osmsto</b>
900	<b>devetsto</b>
1000	<b>tyseč</b>
2000	<b>dva tyseč</b>
3000	<b>tri tyseč</b>

## other useful words

Yes.	
<b>Da.</b>	
No.	
<b>Ne.</b>	
OK.	
<b>OK.</b>	
Well.	
Good.	
<b>Dobro.</b>	
In order.	
<b>Redno.</b>	
Calmly!	
<b>Pokojno!</b>	
Quiet, please!	
<b>Tiho prošu!</b>	
No problem!	
<b>Ne je problema!</b>	
Don't worry!	
<b>Ne staraj se!</b>	
<b>Ne starajte se!</b> ( <i>politely or pl.</i> )	
Oh! That's good!	
<b>Ej, tuto je dobro!</b>	
What a shame!	
<b>Sramota!</b>	
<b>Stydno!</b>	
I can't believe it.	
<b>Ne mogu tomu věřiti.</b>	
Sorry! Excuse me!	
<b>Izvini!</b>	
<b>Izvinite!</b> ( <i>politely or pl.</i> )	

Big.  
**Veliky.** (*m.*) **Velika.** (*f.*) **Veliko.** (*n.*)  
**Veliki.** (*pl. m.anim.*) **Velike** (*pl. other*)

Small.	This is ... .
<b>Maly.</b> (m.) <b>Mala.</b> (f.) <b>Male.</b> (n.) <b>Mali.</b> (pl.)	<b>To je</b> ... .
Much, very.	This is mine.
<b>Mnogo.</b>	<b>Tuto je moje.</b>
Little. A few of.	This is Yours.
<b>Malo.</b>	<b>Tuto je Tvoje.</b>
Sir!	<b>Tuto je Vaše.</b> ( <i>politely or pl.</i> )
<b>Gospodi!</b>	
Madam!	Give me this!
<b>Gospodo!</b>	<b>Daj mi to!</b>
My pleasure.	<b>Dajte mi to!</b> ( <i>politely or pl.</i> )
<b>Drago mi je.</b>	
You are welcome.	Do you like ... ?
<b>S radostju.</b>	<b>Nravi li se tobě ... ?</b>
You're very kind!	<b>Nravi li se vam ... ?</b> ( <i>politely or pl.</i> )
<b>Jesi mnogo milostiv!</b> (m.)	I like ... .
<b>Jesi mnogo milostiva!</b> (f.)	<b>Nravi se mi ... .</b> ( <i>accusative</i> )
<b>Jeste mnogo milostivi!</b> ( <i>politely or pl.</i> )	I like your ... .
Would you like to dance with me?	<b>Nravi se mi twoje ... .</b> ( <i>accusative</i> )
<b>Hočeš li se mnoju tancovati?</b>	<b>Nravi se mi vaše ... .</b> ( <i>accusative, politely or pl.</i> )
<b>Hočete li se mnoju tancovati?</b> ( <i>politely or pl.</i> )	
<b>Mogu li prositi tanec?</b>	Are You kidding?
One moment please.	<b>Šutiš li?</b>
<b>Moment prošu.</b>	<b>Šutite li?</b> ( <i>politely or pl.</i> )
Only a little/few.	Yes, I am kidding.
<b>Samo malo.</b>	<b>Ej, šutim.</b>
Look!	We are friends.
<b>Pozri!</b>	<b>My jesmo prijatelji.</b>
<b>Pozrite!</b> ( <i>politely or pl.</i> )	Do you love me?
What is this?	<b>Ljubiš li mene?</b>
<b>Čto je to?</b>	<b>Ljubite li mene?</b> ( <i>politely or pl.</i> )
	I don't love you.
	<b>Ja tebe ne ljubju/ljubim.</b>
	<b>Ja vas ne ljubju/ljubim.</b> ( <i>politely or pl.</i> )
	I love you.
	<b>Ja tebe ljubju/ljubim.</b>
	<b>Ja tas ljubju/ljubim.</b> ( <i>politely or pl.</i> )

# Interslavic-English vocabulary

## A

**ako ... potom ... inako ... article** if ... then ... else ...  
**ale conj.** but  
**ali article** however  
**anglijsky adv.** English  
**anglijsky adj.** English  
**auto n. /sělo** car, vehicle, automobile  
**az pron. personal I**

## B

**bazen m. /grad** pool (swimming)  
**bez prep. gen.** without, except  
**bezmesny adj.** meat-free, vegetarian  
**běgati, běžiš v. ipf.** run  
**běh, běše, běše, běhmo, běste, běhu v. ipf.** \* past tense (to be)  
**běly adj.** white  
**Blagu Novu Godinu! idiom** Happy New Year!  
**blagodariti, blagodariš v. ipf.** thank, bless  
**blagy adj.** nice, pleasant, joyful  
**bo conj.** because  
**Bog m. /brat** God  
**bolest f. /kost** disease  
**bolestno adv.** sick  
**bolestny adj.** sick  
**bolje adv.** more  
**bolnica f. /duša** hospital  
**bolší adj.** bigger  
**brat m. /brat** brother  
**bratstvo n. /sělo** brotherhood  
**budu, budeš, bude, budemo, budete, budut v. ipf.** \* future tense (to be)  
**byh, bys, by, byhmo, byste, byhu v. ipf.** \* conditional (to be)  
**byk, byče! m. /brat** bull  
**bystro adv.** quickly  
**bystry adj.** quick  
**byti, jesm, jesi, ... v. ipf.** be

## C

**cěsarj m. /muž** emperor  
**cěsarica f. /duša** empress  
**cukr m. /grad** sugar  
**cvět m. /grad** color

## Č

**čakati, čakaješ v. ipf.** wait

**černy adj.** black

**červeny adj.** red

**Čestim! idiom** Congratulations!

**četvrty num. ordinal** fourth

**četyri num.** four

**četyrideset num.** forty

**četyrinadset num.** fourteen

**čitati, čitaješ v. ipf.** read

**člověk, člověče! m. /brat** man (human being)

**čto? pron. interrog.** what?

**črěz prep. acc.** through

**čuti, čuješ v. ipf.** feel something

**čuti se, čuješ se v. ipf.** feel yourself

## D

**da conj.** in order to, that

**da article** yes

**Da se skoro vidimo! idiom** See you soon!

**dati, daješ v. pf.** give

**davati, davaješ v. ipf.** give

**davno adv.** long ago, long time

**davny adj.** long ago, long time

**den, dn- m. /grad** day

**deset num.** ten

**desety num. ordinal** tenth

**desno adv.** right

**desny adj.** right

**dete n. /tele** child

**detko n. /sělo** child

**devet num.** nine

**devetdeset num.** ninety

**devetnadset num.** nineteen

**devety num. ordinal** nineth

**dělati, dělaješ v. ipf.** work, do

**dětko n. /sělo** child

**dnes adv.** today

**do prep. gen.** into, inside, to

**Dobro jutro! idiom** Good morning! (early morning)

**dobro adv.** good

**Dobro došli! idiom** Welcome!

**Dobro mi je. idiom** I am fine.

**Dobru noč! idiom** Good night!

**dobry adj.** good

**Dobry den! idiom** Good morning! (later), Good afternoon!

**Dobry ukus! idiom** Bon appetit!, Enjoy your meal!

**Dobry večer!** *idiom* Good evening!  
**dočera** *f.* /žena daughter  
**doči** *f.* /mati daughter  
**doktor** *m.* /brat doctor  
**doktorica** *f.* /duša doctor (female)  
**dol** *m.* /grad valley, lowlands  
**dolina** *f.* /žena valley, lowlands  
**dolu** *adv.* down  
**dom** *m.* /grad house, building  
**doma** *adv.* at home  
**domačny** *adj.* home  
**dopisati**, dopišeš *v. pf.* complete writing  
**dorabotati**, dorabotaješ *v. pf.* finish working  
**dosta** *adv.* enough  
**dostati**, dostaneš *v. pf.* obtain, get  
**dostojenstvo** *n.* /sělo dignity  
**Dovidženja!** *idiom* Goodbye!  
**dragy** *adj.* dear  
**drevo** *n.* /sělo wood  
**drug** *m.* /brat friend, partner  
**drug s drugom** *idiom* one another, progressively, mutually  
**duh**, duše! *m.* /brat spirit  
**dva** *num.* two  
**dvadeset** *num.* twenty  
**dvanadset** *num.* twelve

## E

**ej** *article* yes, of course, eh, yea  
**ekologičny** *adj.* ecological

## G

**G.** (gospod) sir, Mr., gentleman  
**G-a.** (gospoda) lady, Ms., Mrs.  
**glad** *m.* /grad hunger  
**gladny** *adj.* hungry  
**glupec**, glupče! *m.* /muž stupid man  
**glupica** *f.* /duša stupid woman  
**glupo** *adv.* stupid  
**glupy** *adj.* stupid  
**gněvati**, gněvaješ *v. ipf.* make angry  
**god** *m.* /grad year  
**godina** *f.* /žena year  
**gora** *f.* /žena hill, mountain  
**gorě** *adv.* up, to the top  
**gorny** *adj.* upper  
**gorsky** *adj.* mountain  
**gorši** *adj.* worst  
**gospod** *m.* /brat sir, Mr., gentleman  
**gospoda** *f.* /žena lady, Ms., Mrs.

**govoriti**, govoriš *v. ipf.* say, talk  
**grammatika** *f.* /žena grammar  
**Gratulacija!** *idiom* Congratulations!  
**gryznuti**, gryzneš *v. pf.* bite  
**gybnuti**, gybneš *v. pf.* die

## H

**hladny** *adj.* cold  
**hlěb** *m.* /grad bread  
**hotel** *m.* /grad hotel  
**hotěti**, hočeš *v. ipf.* want  
**Hristos se rodi!** *idiom* Merry Christmas!  
**Hristos vozkres!** *idiom* Happy Easter!  
**Hvala!** *idiom* thanks!, blessing!, laud!  
**hvaliti**, hvališ *v. ipf.* thank, bless

## I

**i** *conj.* and  
**i ili** *conj.* or (logically)  
**ili** *conj.* or (either)  
**imati**, imaješ *v. ipf.* have  
**ime** *n.* /ime name  
**iměti**, iměješ *v. ipf.* have  
**iskati**, iskaješ *v. ipf.* look for, seek  
**istina** *f.* /žena truth, certainty  
**iti**, ideš, išel *v. ipf.* go, walk  
**iz** *prep. gen.* from  
**izjutra** *adv.* tomorrow  
**izkončiti**, izkončiš *v. pf.* close, conclude, expire  
**izměriti**, izmériš *v. pf.* measure  
**iznovo** *adv.* again  
**izpiti**, izpiješ *v. pf.* drink (out)  
**iztvoriti**, iztvořiš *v. pf.* create

## J

**ja** *pron. personal I*  
**jedati**, jedaješ *v. ipf.* eat  
**jedanje** *n.* /polje eating, meal  
**jedenje** *n.* /polje eating, meal  
**jedinadset** *num.* eleven  
**jedin, jedna, jedno** *num.* one  
**jesm, jesi, jest/je, jesmo, jeste, sut** *v.*  
*ipf.* \* present tense (to be)  
**jesti**, jedeš, jedl *v. ipf.* eat  
**ješće** *adv.* yet  
**jezyk** *m.* /grad language  
**jutras** *adv.* today morning, this morning  
**jutreny** *adj.* morning, at sunrise  
**jutro** *n.* /sělo morning  
**jutrom** *adv.* morning

## K

**k** prep. dat. to, at  
**kako?** adv. interrog. how?  
**kaky?** pron. interrog. which?, what kind of?  
**kamo?** adv. interrog. where? (a new desired position of something/somebody)  
**kancelarija** f. /duša office  
**kazati**, kažeš v. ipf. say  
**kde?** adv. interrog. where? (an existing position of something/somebody)  
**kino** n. /sélo cinema  
**kniga** f. /žena book  
**kočka** f. /žena cat  
**kogda?** adv. interrog. when?  
**kokoška** f. /žena hen, chicken  
**koliko?** num. interrog. how much?, how many?  
**koliky?** num. interrog. what?, what order?  
**komputer** m. /grad computer  
**končiti**, končiš v. ipf. close, conclude, expire  
**konj** m. /muž horse  
**kraj** m. /nož area, land, district  
**krajina** f. /žena land, district, state  
**krava** f. /žena cow  
**krivo** adv. false, awry  
**krivy** adj. false, awry  
**kromě** prep. gen. except  
**který?** pron. interrog. which?  
**kto?** pron. interrog. who?  
**kudu?** adv. interrog. where? (on the way to a new desired position from an existing position)  
**kupati**, kupaješ v. ipf. swim, take a bath  
**kupiti**, kupiš v. pf. buy  
**kupovati**, kupuješ v. ipf. buy

## L

**letěti**, letiš v. ipf. fly  
**lěs** m. /grad forest, wood  
**lětny** adj. summer  
**lěto** n. /sélo Summer, year  
**lětom** adv. in Summer  
**lěvo** adv. left  
**lěvy** adj. left  
**li** article \* querying  
**ljudi** f. pl. /kost men, persons

**ložica** f. /duša spoon  
**lučší** adj. better

## M

**malo** adv. few, a little of  
**maly** adj. small  
**mama** f. /žena mother, mummy  
**mati** f. /mati mother  
**medžu** prep. acc. between, among  
**medžu** prep. instr. between, among  
**medžuslovjansky** adj., adv. Interslavic  
**menší** adj. smaller  
**meso** n. /sélo meat, flesh  
**měriti**, mériš v. ipf. measure  
**milion** num. million  
**mimo** prep. acc. beyond, outside, aside, except  
**mir** m. /grad world  
**mlady** adj. young  
**mlěko** n. /sélo milk  
**Mnoge lěta!** idiom Happy Birthday!  
**mnogo** adv. very, much, many, a lot of, plenty of  
**Mnogo štěstja!** idiom Good luck!  
**mnogy** adj. numerous  
**moj, moja, moje, ...** pron. poss. my  
**motor** m. /grad engine, motor  
**možno** adv. possibly  
**možny** adj. possible  
**mogti**, možeš v. ipf. can  
**muž** m. /muž man (masculine)  
**my** pron. personal we  
**mysliti**, mysliš v. ipf. think

## N

**na** prep. acc. on, at, onto, upon  
**na** prep. loc. on, at, onto, upon  
**Na zdravje!** idiom Cheers!, Good health!  
**nad** prep. acc. above, over (direction)  
**nad** prep. instr. above, over (place)  
**naj-** prefix the most  
**najbolje** adv. the most  
**najvyše** adv. the most  
**naložiti**, naložiš v. pf. load, put down  
**napinavati**, napinavaješ v. ipf. strain, stretch  
**napisati**, napišeš v. pf. write down  
**naš** pron. poss. our  
**navyše** article moreover  
**ne** article no, not  
**něčto** pron. indef. something

**několiko** *num. indef.* some, some amount of  
**něčto** *pron. indef.* something  
**ni ... ni ...** *conj.* neither ... nor ...  
**no** *conj.* but  
**noč** *f. /kost* night  
**nočis** *adv.* today night, this night, tonight  
**noviny** *f. pl. /žena* news, newspaper  
**novo** *adv.* new  
**novoslovjansky** *adv.* Neoslavonic  
**novoslovjansky** *adj.* Neoslavonic  
**novy** *adj.* new  
**nož** *m. /nož* knife  
**nula** *num.* nil, zero

## O

**o** *prep. loc.* about, concerning  
**obače** *article* despite, yet, notwithstanding  
**obdariti**, obdaríš *v. pf.* endow, endue  
**oblast** *f. /kost* land, district, state  
**obuti**, obuješ *v. pf.* put on shoes, boot  
**obuv** *f. /kost* shoe  
**okolo** *prep. gen.* around  
**on** *pron. personal* he  
**ona** *pron. personal* she  
**oni** *pron. personal* they  
**ono** *pron. personal* it  
**on, ona, ono** *pron. personal* he, she, it  
**orchestra** *f. /žena* orchestra  
**osm** *num.* eight  
**osmdeset** *num.* eighty  
**osmnadset** *num.* eighteen  
**oslepnuti**, oslepneš *v. pf.* go blind  
**osmy** *num. ordinal* eighth  
**ostati**, ostaneš *v. pf.* stay  
**ostrahovati**, ostrahovaješ *v. ipf.* assure, insure, cover by insurance  
**od** *prep. gen.* out from, by  
**odběgati**, odběžíš *v. pf.* run out  
**otec**, otče! *m. /muž* father  
**odlično** *adv.* excellent, super  
**odličny** *adj.* excellent, super  
**odpad** *m. /grad* waste  
**odrěkavati**, odrěkavaješ *v. ipf.* deny  
**ovca** *f. /duša* sheep  
**ovladnuti**, ovladneš *v. pf.* govern, gain control

## P

**paper** *m. /grad* paper

**par** *m. /grad* pair  
**pekti**, pečeš *v. ipf.* bake  
**pes**, ps- *m. /grad* dog  
**pet** *num.* five  
**petdeset** *num.* fifty  
**petnadset** *num.* fifteen  
**pety** *num. ordinal* fifth  
**pěše** *adv.* pedestrian, a foot, by foot, on foot  
**pěši** *adj.* pedestrian, a foot, by foot, on foot  
**pisati**, pišeš *v. ipf.* write  
**pismo** *n. /sělo* letter, script  
**pití**, piješ *v. ipf.* drink  
**pitje** *n. /polje* drink  
**pivo** *n. /sělo* beer  
**platiti**, platiš *v. ipf.* pay  
**plavati**, plaveš *v. ipf.* swim  
**plavy** *adj.* blue  
**plaža** *f. /duša* beach  
**pluti**, pluješ *v. ipf.* swim  
**po** *prep. dat.* in the way of  
**po** *prep. loc.* after, upon, on  
**pod** *prep. acc.* below, under  
**pod** *prep. instr.* below, under  
**polednes** *adv.* noon today, this noon  
**policija** *f. /duša* police  
**polje** *n. /polje* field  
**poljny** *adj.* field, rural  
**polny** *adj.* full  
**polovina** *f. /žena* half  
**pomagati**, pomagaješ *v. ipf.* help, assist  
**pomoč** *f. /kost* help  
**pomogti**, pomožeš *v. pf.* help, assist  
**poslě** *prep. gen.* after  
**postupati**, postupuješ *v. pf.* act towards, come on, proceed  
**potom** *part.* then  
**povratno** *adv.* reversed, return, oppositely  
**povratny** *adj.* reversed, return, opposite  
**pozdrav** *m. /grad* greeting  
**pozvoniti**, pozvoniš *v. pf.* ring the bell, make a phone call  
**požar** *m. /grad* fire  
**pravda** *f. /žena* truth, verity  
**pravo** *n. /sělo* right, claim, privilege  
**pravo** *adv.* right, correctly  
**pravy** *adj.* correct, right  
**před** *prep. acc.* before, ahead of, in the face of, in front of

**prěd** *prep. instr.* before, ahead of, in the face of, in front of  
**prěmo** *adv.* straight, directly  
**prěmy** *adj.* straight, direct  
**pri** *prep. loc.* at, near to, by (where?)  
**priiti**, priideš, priišel *v. ipf.* come, arrive  
**prijatelj** *m. /muž* friend  
**prijateljica** *f. /duša* friend (female)  
**priroda** *f. /žena* nature, countryside  
**pristupiti**, pristupiš *v. ipf.* accede, come on  
**prodati**, prodaješ *v. pf.* sell  
**prodavati**, prodavaješ *v. ipf.* sell  
**prositi**, prosiš *v. ipf.* please, ask  
**proslaviti**, proslaviš *v. pf.* celebrate, proclaim  
**protiv** *prep. dat.* against  
**prvy** *num. ordinal* first  
**put** *m. /grad* way, travel

## R

**rabotati**, rabotaješ *v. ipf.* work  
**radi** *prep. gen.* due to, in order to, because  
**radovati se**, raduj- *v. ipf.* rejoice, nice to ...  
**razděliti**, razděliš *v. pf.* separate, distribute  
**razdělivati**, razdělivaješ *v. ipf.* separate, distribute  
**razmysliti**, razmysliš *v. pf.* think over, hesitate  
**razum** *m. /grad* reason, intellect  
**razuměti**, razuměješ *v. ipf.* understand  
**razumiti**, razumiš *v. ipf.* understand  
**redaktor** *m. /brat* editor  
**roditi**, rodiš *v. ipf.* breed  
**roditi se**, rod- *v. ipf.* be born  
**rovno** *adv.* equally, the same  
**rovny** *adj.* equal, the same  
**razvezati**, razvezaješ *v. pf.* unlace, undo, dissolve, unbind  
**rukavica** *f. /duša* glove  
**Rus** *m. /brat* Russian  
**russky** *adj.* Russian  
**ryba** *f. /žena* fish  
**rysovati**, rysuješ *v. ipf.* draw

## S

**s** *prep. instr.* with, together with, by (how?)

**samo** *adv.* only  
**samolet** *m. /brat* airplane, plane (airplane)  
**sedm** *num.* seven  
**sedmdeset** *num.* seventy  
**sedmnadset** *num.* seventeen  
**seděti**, sediš *v. ipf.* sit  
**sedmy** *num. ordinal* seventh  
**sej, sa, se** *pron. demonstr.* the  
**seknuti**, sekneš *v. pf.* strike, cut  
**sestra** *f. /žena* sister  
**se, sebe, sobě** *pron.* \* reflexive pronoun  
**silno** *adv.* strong  
**silny** *adj.* strong  
**skakati**, skakaješ *v. ipf.* jump  
**skočiti**, skočiš *v. pf.* jump  
**slaby** *adj.* weak  
**sladky** *adj.* sweet  
**slaviti**, slaviš *v. ipf.* celebrate, proclaim  
**slepo** *adv.* blind  
**sleepy** *adj.* blind  
**solnce** *n. /polje* sun  
**slon** *m. /brat* elephant  
**slovo** *n. /sělo* word  
**slovo** *n. /nebo* word  
**slušati**, slušaješ *v. ipf.* listen  
**slyšeti**, slyšiš *v. ipf.* hear, can hear  
**sol** *f. /kost* salt  
**sotny** *num. ordinal* hundredth  
**sovezati**, sovezaješ *v. pf.* bind, link, unite, unify  
**sovřiti**, sovřiš *v. pf.* culminate, improve, make perfect  
**spati**, spiš *v. ipf.* sleep  
**srebro** *n. /sělo* silver  
**stanica** *f. /duša* station  
**staro** *adv.* old  
**stary** *adj.* old  
**sto** *num.* hundred  
**stol** *m. /grad* table  
**strahovati**, strahovaješ *v. ipf.* afraid, fear  
**strojiti**, strojiš *v. ipf.* build, construct  
**student** *m. /brat* student  
**studentica** *f. /duša* student (female)  
**svěst** *f. /kost* conscience  
**svět** *m. /grad* world  
**svěže** *adv.* fresh  
**svěži** *adj.* fresh  
**svinja** *f. /duša* pork  
**svobodno** *adv.* free  
**svobodny** *adj.* free

**svoj, svoja, svoje, svoji** *pron. poss.* \*

reflexive pronoun

**syn** *m. /brat* son

## Š

**šest** *num.* six

**šestdeset** *num.* sixty

**šesnáct** *num.* sixteen

**šestý** *num. ordinal* sixth

**škola** *f. /žena* school

**šestnáct!** *idiom* Bon voyage!

**čto** *pron. interrog.* what

**čto děláš?** *idiom* How do you do?

**čto děláte?** *idiom* How do you do?  
(politely or pl.)

**čto?** *pron. interrog.* what?

**šum** *m. /grad* noise

## T

**tamo** *adv.* there

**tele** *n. /tele* calf

**temno** *adv.* dark

**temny** *adj.* dark

**teply** *adj.* warm

**toaleta** *f. /žena* restroom, toilet

**točka** *f. /žena* point, decimal point

**točno** *adv.* exactly, precisely

**točny** *adj.* exact, precise

**toliko** *num.* as much, as many, this amount, only

**trěba** *f. /žena* need

**trěba jest**, dative, accusative *idiom* it is necessary, should (somebody should do something)

**trěbovatí**, trěbuješ *v. ipf.* need

**tretina** *f. /žena* third

**tretji** *num. ordinal* third

**trg, trž!** *m. /grad* market, shop

**tri** *num.* three

**trideset** *num.* thirty

**trináct** *num.* thirteen

**tu** *adv.* here

**tvoj** *pron. poss.* your (sg.)

**tvoriti**, tvoriš *v. ipf.* create

**ty** *pron. personal* you (sg.)

**tyseč** *num.* thousand

## U

**u** *prep. gen.* near to, at

**ubo** *article* thus, therefore, hence

**učitelj** *m. /muž* teacher

**učiteljica** *f. /duša* teacher (female)

**učiti**, učiš *v. ipf.* teach

**učiti se**, uč- *v. ipf.* learn

**ukus** *m. /grad* taste

**ulica** *f. /žena* street

**unší** *adj.* nicer, more pleasant, more joyful

**uživati**, užívaješ *v. ipf.* enjoy

## V

**v** *prep. acc.* in, into, inside of

**v** *prep. loc.* in, into, inside of

**V istinu vozkres!** *idiom* answer to "Happy Easter!"

**variti**, variš *v. ipf.* boil, cook

**vaš** *pron. poss.* your (pl. or politely)

**vozkresnuti**, vozkresneš *v. pf.* resurrect, revive

**vozletěti**, vozletiš *v. pf.* fly up, take off, start flying

**važiti**, važiš *v. ipf.* be valid, apply

**včera** *adv.* yesterday

**včerajší** *adj.* yesterday

**večer** *m. /grad* evening

**večeras** *adv.* today evening, this evening, tonight

**vegetarian** *m. /brat* vegetarian

**veliky** *adj.* big, large, great

**Vesela koleda!** *idiom* Merry Christmas!

**vezati**, vezaješ *v. ipf.* bind, link, unite, unify

**viděti**, vidiš *v. ipf.* see, can see

**vidlica** *f. /duša* fork

**vino** *n. /sělo* wine

**vkupě** *adv.* together

**vladyka** *m. /žena+brat* ruler, governor

**vlak** *m. /grad* train

**vně** *prep. gen.* out of, outside of

**vně** *prep. acc.* out of, outside of

**voda** *f. /žena* water

**vréme** *n. /ime* time, weather

**vrh, vrše!** *m. /grad* hill, peak

**vsejmir** *m. /grad* universe, space, cosmos

**vsej, vsa, vse, vsi** *pron. indef.* all, every, each

**vtory** *num. ordinal* second

**vy** *pron. personal* you (pl. or politely)

**vyše** *adv.* more

## Z

**za** *prep. acc.* after, behind, towards

<b>za</b> <i>prep. acc.</i> for, in favour	<b>zly</b> <i>adj.</i> bad, evil
<b>za</b> <i>prep. instr.</i> after, behind	<b>znati</b> , znaješ <i>v. ipf.</i> know
<b>začto?</b> <i>adv. interrog.</i> why?	
<b>zajec</b> , zajc-, zajče! <i>m. /muž</i> hare, rabbit	<b>Ž</b>
<b>začto?</b> <i>adv. interrog.</i> why?	<b>že</b> <i>conj.</i> that
<b>Zdravejte!</b> <i>idiom</i> Hello! (politely or pl.)	<b>železny</b> <i>adj.</i> iron
<b>Zdravej!</b> <i>idiom</i> Hello!	<b>železo</b> <i>n. /sělo</i> iron
<b>zdravje</b> <i>n. /polje</i> health	<b>žena</b> <i>f. /žena</i> woman, wife, lady
<b>zdravy</b> <i>adj.</i> healthy, sane	<b>žežda</b> <i>f. /žena</i> thirst
<b>zeleny</b> <i>adj.</i> green	<b>žeždny</b> <i>adj.</i> thirsty
<b>zima</b> <i>f. /žena</i> Winter, cold	<b>žiti</b> , žiješ <i>v. ipf.</i> live
<b>zimě</b> <i>adv.</i> in winter	<b>životno</b> <i>n. /sělo</i> animal
<b>zimny</b> <i>adj.</i> winter	<b>žlutý</b> <i>adj.</i> yellow
<b>zimoju</b> <i>adv.</i> in Winter	<b>žrebec</b> , žrebc-, žrebče! <i>m. /muž</i> stallion
<b>zlato</b> <i>n. /sělo</i> gold	
<b>zlo</b> <i>adv.</i> bad, evil	



## English-Interslavic vocabulary

**conditional (to be)** byh, bys, by, byhmo, byste, byhu *v. ipf.*  
**future tense (to be)** budu, budeš, bude, budemo, budete, budut *v. ipf.*  
**past tense (to be)** běh, běše, běše, běhmo, běste, běhu *v. ipf.*  
**present tense (to be)** jesm, jesi, jest/je, jesmo, jeste, sut *v. ipf.*  
**querying** li *article*  
**reflexive pronoun** **1** se, sebe, sobě *pron.* **2** svoj, svoja, svoje, svoji *pron. poss.*

### A

**a foot** **1** pěše *adv.* **2** pěši *adj.*  
**a little of** malo *adv.*  
**a lot of** mnogo *adv.*  
**about** o *prep. loc.*  
**above** **1** nad *prep. acc.* **2** nad *prep. instr.*  
**accede** pristupiti, pristupiš *v. ipf.*  
**act towards** postupati, postupuješ *v. pf.*  
**afraid** strahovati, strahovaješ *v. ipf.*  
**after** **1** po *prep. loc.* **2** poslě *prep. gen.* **3** za *prep. acc.* **4** za *prep. instr.*  
**again** iznovo *adv.*  
**against** protiv *prep. dat.*  
**ahead of** **1** pred *prep. acc.* **2** pred *prep. instr.*  
**airplane** samolet *m. /brat*  
**all** vsej, vsa, vse, vsi *pron. indef.*  
**among** **1** medžu *prep. acc.* **2** medžu *prep. instr.*  
**and** i *conj.*  
**animal** životno *n. /sělo*  
**answer to "Happy Easter!"** V istinu vozkres! *idiom*  
**apply** važiti, važiš *v. ipf.*  
**area** kraj *m. /nož*  
**around** okolo *prep. gen.*  
**arrive** priiti, priideš, priišel *v. ipf.*  
**as many** toliko *num.*  
**as much** toliko *num.*  
**aside** mimo *prep. acc.*  
**ask** prositi, prosiš *v. ipf.*  
**assist** **1** pomagati, pomagaješ *v. ipf. **2** pomogti, pomožeš *v. pf.*  
**assure** ostrahovati, ostrahovaješ *v. ipf.*  
**at** **1** k *prep. dat.* **2** na *prep. acc.* **3** na *prep. loc.* **4** pri *prep. loc.* **5** u *prep. gen.*  
**at home** doma *adv.**

**at sunrise** jutreny *adj.*  
**automobile** auto *n. /sělo*  
**awry** **1** krivo *adv.* **2** krivy *adj.*

### B

**bad** **1** zlo *adv. **2** zly *adj.*  
**bake** pekti, pečeš *v. ipf.*  
**be** byti, jesm, jesi, ... *v. ipf.*  
**be born** roditi se, rod- *v. ipf.*  
**be valid** važiti, važiš *v. ipf.*  
**beach** plaža *f. /duša*  
**because** **1** bo *conj. **2** radi *prep. gen.*  
**beer** pivo *n. /sělo*  
**before** **1** pred *prep. acc.* **2** pred *prep. instr.*  
**behind** **1** za *prep. acc.* **2** za *prep. instr.*  
**below** **1** pod *prep. acc.* **2** pod *prep. instr.*  
**better** lučsi *adj.*  
**between** **1** medžu *prep. acc.* **2** medžu *prep. instr.*  
**beyond** mimo *prep. acc.*  
**big** veliky *adj.*  
**bigger** bolši *adj.*  
**bind** **1** sovezati, sovezaješ *v. pf. **2** vezati, vezaješ *v. ipf.*  
**bite** gryznuti, gryzneš *v. pf.*  
**black** černy *adj.*  
**bless** **1** blagodariti, blagodariš *v. ipf. **2** hvaliti, hvališ *v. ipf.*  
**blessing!** Hvala! *idiom*  
**blind** **1** slepo *adv. **2** sleepy *adj.*  
**blue** plavy *adj.*  
**boile** variti, variš *v. ipf.*  
**Bon appetit!** Dobry ukus! *idiom*  
**Bon voyage!** Ščestny put! *idiom*  
**book** kniga *f. /žena*  
**boot** obuti, obuješ *v. pf.*  
**bread** hlěb *m. /grad*  
**breed** roditi, rodiš *v. ipf.*  
**brother** brat *m. /brat*  
**brotherhood** bratstvo *n. /sělo*  
**build** strojiti, strojiš *v. ipf.*  
**building** dom *m. /grad*  
**bull** byk, byče! *m. /brat*  
**bus** autobus *m. /grad*  
**but** ale, no *conj.*  
**buy** **1** kupiti, kupiš *v. pf. **2** kupovati, kupuješ *v. ipf.*  
**by** od *prep. gen.*******

**by (how?)** s prep. instr.  
**by (where?)** pri prep. loc.  
**by foot** 1 pěše adv. 2 pěši adj.

## C

**calf** tele n. /tele  
**can** mogti, možeš v. ipf.  
**can hear** slyšeti, slyšiš v. ipf.  
**can see** viděti, vidiš v. ipf.  
**car** auto n. /sělo  
**cat** kočka f. /žena  
**celebrate** 1 proslaviti, proslaviš v. pf. 2 slaviti, slaviš v. ipf.  
**certainty** istina f. /žena  
**Cheers!** Na zdravje! idiom  
**chicken** kokoška f. /žena  
**child** 1 dete n. /tele 2 detko n. /sělo 3 dětko n. /sělo  
**cinema** kino n. /sělo  
**claim** pravo n. /sělo  
**close** 1 izkončiti, izkončiš v. pf. 2 končiti, končiš v. ipf.  
**cold** 1 hladny adj. 2 zima f. /žena  
**color** cvět m. /grad  
**come** priiti, priideš, priišel v. ipf.  
**come on** 1 postupati, postupuješ v. pf. 2 pristupiti, pristupiš v. ipf.  
**complete writing** dopisati, dopišeš v. pf.  
**computer** komputer m. /grad  
**concerning** o prep. loc.  
**conclude** 1 izkončiti, izkončiš v. pf. 2 končiti, končiš v. ipf.  
**Congratulations!** 1 Čestim! idiom 2 Gratulacija! idiom  
**conscience** svěst f. /kost  
**construct** strojiti, strojiš v. ipf.  
**cook** variti, variš v. ipf.  
**correct** pravy adj.  
**correctly** pravo adv.  
**cosmos** vsejmir m. /grad  
**countryside** priroda f. /žena  
**cover by insurance** ostrahovati, ostrahovaješ v. ipf.  
**cow** krava f. /žena  
**create** 1 iztvoriti, iztvoriš v. pf. 2 tvoriti, tvoriš v. ipf.  
**culminate** sovršiti, sovršiš v. pf.  
**cut** seknuti, sekneš v. pf.

## D

**dark** 1 temno adv. 2 temny adj.

**daughter** 1 dočera f. /žena 2 doči f. /mati  
**day** den, dn- m. /grad  
**dear** dragy adj.  
**decimal point** točka f. /žena  
**deny** odrékavati, odrékavaješ v. ipf.  
**despite of** obače article  
**die** gybnuti, gybneš v. pf.  
**dignity** dostojenstvo n. /sělo  
**direct** přemy adj.  
**directly** přemo adv.  
**disease** bolest f. /kost  
**dissolve** razvezatati, razvezaješ v. pf.  
**distribute** 1 razděliti, razděliš v. pf. 2 razdělivati, razdělivaješ v. ipf.  
**district** 1 kraj m. /nož 2 krajina f. /žena 3 oblast f. /kost  
**do** dělati, dělaješ v. ipf.  
**doctor** doktor m. /brat  
**doctor (female)** doktorica f. /duša  
**dog** pes, ps- m. /grad  
**down** dolu adv.  
**draw** rysovati, rysuješ v. ipf.  
**drink** 1 piti, piješ v. ipf. 2 pitje n. /polje  
**drink (out)** izpiti, izpiješ v. pf.  
**due to** radi prep. gen.

## E

**each** vsej, vsa, vse, vsi pron. indef.  
**eat** jesti, jedeš, jedl v. ipf.  
**eat** jedati, jedaješ, jedl v. ipf.  
**eating** jedenje, jedanje n. /polje  
**ecological** ekologičny adj.  
**editor** redaktor m. /brat  
**eight** osm num.  
**eighteen** osmnadset num.  
**eighth** osmy num. ordinal  
**eighty** osmdeset num.  
**elephant** slon m. /brat  
**eleven** jedinadset num.  
**emperor** césarj m. /muž  
**empress** césarica f. /duša  
**endow** obdariti, obdariš v. pf.  
**endue** obdariti, obdariš v. pf.  
**engine** motor m. /grad  
**English** 1 anglijsky adv. 2 anglijsky adj.  
**enjoy** uživati, uživaješ v. ipf.  
**Enjoy your meal!** Dobry ukus! idiom  
**enough** dosta adv.  
**equal** rovny adj.  
**equally** rovno adv.  
**evening** večer m. /grad

**every** vsej, vsa, vse, vsi *pron. indef.*  
**evil** 1 zlo *adv.* 2 zly *adj.*  
**exact** točny *adj.*  
**exactly** točno *adv.*  
**excellent** 1 odlično *adv.* 2 odličny *adj.*  
**except** 1 bez *prep. gen.* 2 kromě *prep. gen.* 3 mimo *prep. acc.*  
**expire** 1 izkončiti, izkončiš *v. pf.* 2 končiti, končiš *v. ipf.*

## F

**false** 1 krivo *adv.* 2 krivy *adj.*  
**father** otec, otče! *m. /muž*  
**fear** strahovati, strahovaješ *v. ipf.*  
**feel something** čuti, čuješ *v. ipf.*  
**feel yourself** čuti se, čuješ se *v. ipf.*  
**few** malo *adv.*  
**field** polje *n. /polje*  
**fifteen** petnadset *num.*  
**fifth** pety *num. ordinal*  
**fifty** petdeset *num.*  
**finish working** dorabotati, dorabotaješ *v. pf.*  
**fire** požar *m. /grad*  
**first** prvy *num. ordinal*  
**fish** ryba *f. /žena*  
**five** pet *num.*  
**flesh** meso *n. /sělo*  
**fly** letěti, letiš *v. ipf.*  
**fly up** vozletěti, vozletiš *v. pf.*  
**for** za *prep. acc.*  
**forest** lěs *m. /grad*  
**fork** vidlica *f. /duša*  
**four** četyri *num.*  
**fourteen** četyrinadset *num.*  
**fourth** četvrty *num. ordinal*  
**forty** četyrideset *num.*  
**free** 1 svobodno *adv.* 2 svobodny *adj.*  
**fresh** 1 svěže *adv.* 2 svěži *adj.*  
**friend** 1 drug *m. /brat* 2 prijatelj *m. /muž*  
**friend (female)** prijateljica *f. /duša*  
**from** iz *prep. gen.*  
**full** *adj.* polny

## G

**gain control** ovladnuti, ovladneš *v. pf.*  
**gentleman** gospod *m. /brat*  
**get** dostati, dostaneš *v. pf.*  
**give** 1 dati, daješ *v. pf.* 2 davati, davaješ *v. ipf.*  
**glove** rukavica *f. /duša*

**go** iti, ideš, išel *v. ipf.*  
**go blind** oslepnuti, oslepneš *v. pf.*  
**God** Bog *m. /brat*  
**gold** zlato *n. /sělo*  
**good** 1 dobro *adv.* 2 dobry *adj.*  
**Good afternoon!** Dobry den! *idiom*  
**Good evening!** Dobry večer! *idiom*  
**Good health!** Na zdravje! *idiom*  
**Good luck!** Mnogo ščestja! *idiom*  
**Good morning! (early morning)** Dobro jutro! *idiom*  
**Good morning! (later)** Dobry den! *idiom*  
**Good night!** Dobru noč! *idiom*  
**Goodbye!** Dovidženja! *idiom*  
**govern** ovladnuti, ovladneš *v. pf.*  
**governor** vladyka *m. /žena+brat*  
**grammar** grammatika *f. /žena*  
**great** veliky *adj.*  
**green** zeleny *adj.*  
**greeting** pozdrav *m. /grad*

## H

**half** polovina *f. /žena*  
**Happy Birthday!** Mnoge lěta! *idiom*  
**Happy Easter!** Hristos vozkres! *idiom*  
**Happy New Year!** Blaga Nova Godina! *idiom*  
**hare** zajec, zajc-, zajče! *m. /muž*  
**have** 1 imati, imaješ *v. ipf.* 2 iměti, iměješ *v. ipf.*  
**he** on *pron. personal*  
**health** zdravje *n. /polje*  
**healthy** zdravy *adj.*  
**hear** slyšeti, slyšiš *v. ipf.*  
**Hello!** Zdravej! *idiom*  
**Hello! (politely or pl.)** Zdravejte! *idiom*  
**help** 1 pomagati, pomagaješ *v. ipf.* 2 pomoč *f. /kost* 3 pomogti, pomožeš *v. pf.*  
**hen** kokoška *f. /žena*  
**hence** ubo *article*  
**here** tu *adv.*  
**hesitate** razmysliti, razmysliš *v. pf.*  
**he, she, it** on, ona, ono *pron. personal*  
**hill** 1 gora *f. /žena* 2 vrh, vrše! *m. /grad*  
**home** domačny *adj.*  
**horse** konj *m. /muž*  
**hospital** bolnica *f. /duša*  
**hotel** hotel *m. /grad*  
**house** dom *m. /grad*  
**How are you?** Kako jesi? *idiom*

**How are you? (politely or pl.)** Kako  
jeste? *idiom*

**How do you do?** Čto dělaješ? *idiom*

**How do you do? (politely or pl.)** Čto  
dělajete? *idiom*

**how many?** koliko? *num. interrog.*

**how much?** koliko? *num. interrog.*

**however** ali *article*

**how?** kako? *adv. interrog.*

**hundred** sto *num.*

**hundredth** sotny *num. ordinal*

**hunger** glad *m. /grad*

**hungry** gladny *adj.*

## I

**I** **1** ja *pron. personal* **2** az *pron. personal*

**I am fine.** Dobro mi je. *idiom*

**if ... then ... else ...** ako ... potom ... inako ...  
*article*

**improve** sovršiti, sovršiš *v. pf.*

**in** **1** v *prep. acc.* **2** v *prep. loc.*

**in favour** za *prep. acc.*

**in front of** **1** pred *prep. acc.* **2** pred *prep. instr.*

**in order to** **1** da *conj.* **2** radi *prep. gen.*

**in Summer** lětom *adv.*

**in the face of** **1** před *prep. acc.* **2** před  
*prep. instr.*

**in the way of** po *prep. dat.*

**in Winter** zimoju *adv.*

**in winter** zimě *adv.*

**inside** do *prep. gen.*

**inside of** **1** v *prep. acc.* **2** v *prep. loc.*

**insure** ostrahovati, ostrahovaješ *v. ipf.*

**intellect** razum *m. /grad*

**Interslavic** medžuslovjansky *adj., adv.*

**into** **1** do *prep. gen.* **2** v *prep. acc.* **3** v *prep. loc.*

**iron** **1** železny *adj.* **2** železo *n. /sělo*

**it** ono *pron. personal*

**it is necessary** trěba jest, dative, accusa-  
tive *idiom*

## J

**joyful** blagy *adj.*

**jump** **1** skakati, skakaješ *v. ipf.* **2** skočiti,  
skočiš *v. pf.*

## K

**knife** nož *m. /nož*

**know** znati, znaješ *v. ipf.*

## L

**lady** **1** gospoda *f. /žena* **2** žena *f. /žena*

**land** **1** kraj *m. /nož* **2** krajina *f. /žena*

**3** oblast *f. /kost*

**language** jazyk *m. /grad*

**large** veliky *adj.*

**laud!** Hvala! *idiom*

**learn** učiti se, uč- *v. ipf.*

**left** **1** lěvo *adv.* **2** lěvy *adj.*

**letter** pismo *n. /sělo*

**link** **1** sovezati, sovezaješ *v. pf.* **2** vezati,  
vezaješ *v. ipf.*

**listen** slušati, slušaješ *v. ipf.*

**live** žiti, žiješ *v. ipf.*

**load** naložiti, naložiš *v. pf.*

**long ago** **1** davno *adv.* **2** davny *adj.*

**long time** **1** davno *adv.* **2** davny *adj.*

**look for** iskati, iskaješ *v. ipf.*

**lowlands** **1** dol *m. /grad* **2** dolina *f. /žena*

## M

**make a phone call** pozvoniti, pozvoniš *v. pf.*

**make angry** gněvati, gněvaješ *v. ipf.*

**make perfect** sovršiti, sovršiš *v. pf.*

**man (and woman)** člověk, člověče! *m.*  
*/brat*

**man (masculine only)** muž *m. /muž*

**many** mnogo *adv.*

**market** trg, trž! *m. /grad*

**meal** jadenje *n. /polje*

**measure** **1** izměriti, izměriš *v. pf.* **2** měri-  
ti, měriš *v. ipf.*

**meat** meso *n. /sělo*

**meat-free** bezmesny *adj.*

**men (plural)** ljudi *f. pl. /kost*

**Merry Christmas!** **1** Hristos se rodi!  
*idiom* **2** Vesela koleda! *idiom*

**million** milion *num.*

**milk** mléko *n. /sělo*

**more** **1** bolje *adv.* **2** vyše *adv.*

**more joyful** unši *adj.*

**more pleasant** unši *adj.*

**moreover** navyše *article*

**morning** **1** jutreny *adj.* **2** jutro *n. /sělo*  
**3** jutrom *adv.*

**mother** **1** mama *f. /žena* **2** mati *f. /mati*

**motor** motor *m. /grad*

**mountain** **1** gora *f. /žena* **2** gorsky *adj.*

**Mrs.** G-a, gospoda *f. /žena*

**Mr.** G., gospod *m. /brat*  
**Ms.** G-a, gospoda *f. /žena*  
**much** mnogo *adv.*  
**mummy** mama *f. /žena*  
**my** moj, moja, moje, ... *pron. poss.*

## N

**name** ime *n. /ime*  
**nature** priroda *f. /žena*  
**near to** 1 pri *prep. loc.* 2 u *prep. gen.*  
**need** 1 trěba *f. /žena* 2 trěbovati, trěbuješ *v. ipf.*  
**neither ... nor ...** ni ... ni ... *conj.*  
**Neoslavonic** 1 novoslovjansky *adv.* 2 novoslovjansky *adj.*  
**new** 1 novo *adv.* 2 novy *adj.*  
**news** noviny *f. pl. /žena*  
**newspaper** noviny *f. pl. /žena*  
**nice** blagy *adj.*  
**nice to ...** radovati se, raduješ *v. ipf.*  
**nicer** unši *adj.*  
**night** noč *f. /kost*  
**nil** nula *num.*  
**nine** devet *num.*  
**nineteen** devetnadset *num.*  
**nineth** devety *num. ordinal*  
**ninety** devetdeset *num.*  
**no** ne *article*  
**noise** šum *m. /grad*  
**not** ne *article*  
**notwithstanding** obače *article*  
**numerous** mnogy *adj.*

## O

**obtain** dostati, dostaneš *v. pf.*  
**of course** ej *article*  
**office** kancelarija *f. /duša*  
**old** 1 staro *adv.* 2 stary *adj.*  
**on** 1 na *prep. acc.* 2 na *prep. loc.* 3 po *prep. loc.*  
**on foot** 1 pěše *adv.* 2 pěši *adj.*  
**one** jedin, jedna, jedno *num.*  
**one another** drug s drugom *idiom*  
**only** 1 samo *adv.* 2 toliko *adv.*  
**onto** 1 na *prep. acc.* 2 na *prep. loc.*  
**opposite** povratny *adj.*  
**oppositely** povratno *adv.*  
**or (either)** ili *conj.*  
**or (logically)** i ili *conj.*  
**orchestra** orchestra *f. /žena*  
**our** naš *pron. poss.*

**out from** od *prep. gen.*  
**out of** 1 vně *prep. gen.* 2 vně *prep. acc.*  
**outside** mimo *prep. acc.*  
**outside of** 1 vně *prep. gen.* 2 vně *prep. acc.*  
**over** 1 nad *prep. acc.* 2 nad *prep. instr.*

## P

**pair** par *m. /grad*  
**paper** paper *m. /grad*  
**partner** drug *m. /brat*  
**pay** platiti, platiš *v. ipf.*  
**peak** vrh, vrše! *m. /grad*  
**pedestrian** 1 pěše *adv.* 2 pěši *adj.*  
**person** člověk *m. /brat*, osoba *f. /žena*  
**people** ljudi *f. pl. /kosti*  
**plane (airplane)** samolet *m. /brat*  
**pleasant** blagy *adj.*  
**please** prositi, prosiš *v. ipf.*  
**plenty of** mnogo *adv.*  
**point** točka *f. /žena*  
**police** policija *f. /duša*  
**pool (swimming)** bazen *m. /grad*  
**pork** svinja *f. /duša*  
**possible** možny *adj.*  
**possibly** možno *adv.*  
**precise** točny *adj.*  
**precisely** točno *adv.*  
**privilege** pravo *n. /sělo*  
**proceed** postupati, postupuješ *v. pf.*  
**proclaim** 1 proslaviti, proslaviš *v. pf.* 2 slaviti, slaviš *v. ipf.*  
**progressively** drug s drugom *idiom*  
**put down** naložiti, naložiš *v. pf.*  
**put on shoes** obuti, obuješ, v. *pf.*

## Q

**quick** bystry *adj.*  
**quickly** bystro *adv.*

## R

**rabbit** zajec, zajc-, zajče! *m. /muž*  
**read** čitati, čitaješ *v. ipf.*  
**reason** razum *m. /grad*  
**red** červeny *adj.*  
**rejoyce** radovati se, raduj- *v. ipf.*  
**restroom** toaleta *f. /žena*  
**resurrect** vozkresnuti, vozkresneš *v. pf.*  
**return** 1 povratno *adv.* 2 povratny *adj.*  
**reversed** 1 povratno *adv.* 2 povratny *adj.*  
**revive** vozkresnuti, vozkresneš *v. pf.*

**right** 1 desno *adv.* 2 desny *adj.* 3 pravo *n.*

/sělo 4 pravo *adv.* 5 pravy *adj.*

**ring the bell** pozvoniti, pozvoniš *v. pf.*

**ruler** vladyska *m.* /žena+brat

**run** běhati, běžiš *v. ipf.*

**run out** odběhati, odběžiš *v. pf.*

**Russian** 1 Rus *m.* /brat 2 russky *adj.*

## S

**salt** sol *f.* /kost

**sane** zdravy *adj.*

**say** 1 govoriti, govoriš *v. ipf.* 2 kazati, kažeš *v. ipf.*

**school** škola *f.* /žena

**script** pismo *n.* /sělo

**second** vtory *num. ordinal*

**see** viděti, vidiš *v. ipf.*

**See you soon!** Da se skoro vidimo! *idiom*

**seek** iskati, iskaješ *v. ipf.*

**sell** 1 prodati, prodaješ *v. pf.* 2 prodavati, prodavaješ *v. ipf.*

**separate** 1 razděliti, razděliš *v. pf.* 2 razdělivati, razdělivaješ *v. ipf.*

**seven** sedm *num.*

**seventeen** sedmnadset *num.*

**seventh** sedmy *num. ordinal*

**seventy** sedmdeset *num.*

**she** ona *pron. personal*

**sheep** ovca *f.* /duša

**shoe** obuv *f.* /kost

**shop** trg, trže! *m.* /grad

**should (somebody should something)** trěba jest, dative, accusative *idiom*

**sick** 1 bolestno *adv.* 2 bolestny *adj.*

**silver** srebro *n.* /sělo

**sir** gospod *m.* /brat

**sister** sestra *f.* /žena

**sit** seděti, sediš *v. ipf.*

**six** šest *num.*

**sixteen** šestnadset *num.*

**sixth** šestý *num. ordinal*

**sixty** šestdeset *num.*

**sleep** spati, spiš *v. ipf.*

**small** maly *adj.*

**smaller** menši *adj.*

**some** několiko *num. indef.*

**some amount of** několiko *num. indef.*

**something** něčto *pron. indef.*

**son** syn *m.* /brat

**space** vsejmir *m.* /grad

**spirit** duh, duše! *m.* /brat

**spoon** ložica *f.* /duša

**stallion** žrebec, žrebc-, žrebče! *m.* /muž

**start flying** vozletěti, vozletiš *v. pf.*

**state** 1 krajina *f.* /žena 2 oblast *f.* /kost

**station** stanica *f.* /duša

**stay** ostatni, ostaneš *v. pf.*

**straight** 1 přemo *adv.* 2 přemý *adj.*

**strain** napinavati, napinavaješ *v. ipf.*

**street** ulica *f.* /žena

**stretch** napinavati, napinavaješ *v. ipf.*

**strike** seknuti, sekneš *v. pf.*

**strong** 1 silno *adv.* 2 silny *adj.*

**student** student *m.* /brat

**student (female)** studentica *f.* /duša

**stupid** 1 glupo *adv.* 2 glupy *adj.*

**stupid man** glupec, glupče! *m.* /muž

**stupid woman** glupica *f.* /duša

**sugar** cukr *m.* /grad

**Summer** léto *n.* /sělo

**summer** lětny *adj.*

**sun** solnce *n.* /polje

**super** 1 odlično *adv.* 2 odličny *adj.*

**sweet** sladky *adj.*

**swim** 1 kupati, kupaješ *v. ipf.* 2 plavati, plaveš *v. ipf.* 3 pluti, pluješ *v. ipf.*

## T

**table** stol *m.* /grad

**take a bath** kupati, kupaješ *v. ipf.*

**take off** vozletěti, vozletiš *v. pf.*

**talk** govoriti, govoriš *v. ipf.*

**taste** ukus *m.* /grad

**teach** učiti, učiš *v. ipf.*

**teacher** učitelj *m.* /muž

**teacher (female)** učiteljica *f.* /duša

**ten** deset *num.*

**tenth** desety *num. ordinal*

**thank** 1 blagodariti, blagodariš *v. ipf.* 2 hvaliti, hvališ *v. ipf.*

**thanks!** Hvala! *idiom*

**that** 1 da *conj.* 2 že *conj.*

**the** sej, sa, se *pron. demonstr.*

**the most** 1 naj- *prefix* 2 najbolje *adv.* 3 najvyše *adv.*

**the same** 1 rovno *adv.* 2 rovny *adj.*

**then** potom *part.*

**there** tamo *adv.*

**therefore** ubo *article*

**they** oni *pron. personal*

**think** mysliti, mysliš *v. ipf.*

**think over** razmysliti, razmysliš *v. pf.*  
**third** 1 tretina *f. /žena* 2 tretji *num. ordinal*  
**thirst** žežda *f. /žena*  
**thirsty** žeždny *adj.*  
**thirteen** trinadset *num.*  
**thirty** trideset *num.*  
**this amount** toliko *num.*  
**this evening** večeras *adv.*  
**this morning** jutras *adv.*  
**this night** nočis *adv.*  
**this noon** polednes *adv.*  
**thousand** tyseč *num.*  
**three** tri *num.*  
**through** črěz *prep. acc.*  
**thus** ubo *article*  
**time** vrěme *n. /ime*  
**to** 1 do *prep. gen.* 2 k *prep. dat.*  
**to the top** gorě *adv.*  
**today** dnes *adv.*  
**today evening** večeras *adv.*  
**today morning** jutras *adv.*  
**today night** nočis *adv.*  
**today noon** polednes *adv.*  
**together** vkupě *adv.*  
**together with** s *prep. instr.*  
**toilet** toaleta *f. /žena*  
**tomorrow** izjutra *adv.*  
**tonight** 1 nočis *adv.* 2 večeras *adv.*  
**towards** za *prep. acc.*  
**train** vlak *m. /grad*  
**travel** put *m. /grad*  
**truth** 1 istina *f. /žena* 2 pravda *f. /žena*  
**twelve** dvanadset *num.*  
**twenty** dvadeset *num.*  
**two** dva *num.*

## U

**unbind** razvezati, razvezaješ *v. pf.*  
**under** 1 pod *prep. acc.* 2 pod *prep. instr.*  
**understand** 1 razuměti, razuměješ *v. ipf.*  
 2 razumiti, razumiš *v. ipf.*  
**unify** 1 sovezati, sovezaješ *v. pf.* 2 vezati,  
 vezaješ *v. ipf.*  
**unite** 1 sovezati, sovezaješ *v. pf.* 2 vezati,  
 vezaješ *v. ipf.*  
**universe** vsejmir *m. /grad*  
**unlace** razvezati, razvezaješ *v. pf.*  
**up** gorě *adv.*  
**upon** 1 na *prep. acc.* 2 na *prep. loc.* 3 po  
*prep. loc.*

**upper** gorný *adj.*

## V

**valley** 1 dol m. /grad 2 dolina *f. /žena*  
**vegetarian** 1 bezmesny *adj.* 2 vegetarian  
*m. /brat*

**vehicle** auto *n. /sělo*  
**verity** pravda *f. /žena*  
**very** mnogo *adv.*

## W

**wait** čakati, čakaješ *v. ipf.*  
**walk** iti, ideš, išel *v. ipf.*  
**want** hotěti, hočeš *v. ipf.*  
**warm** teply *adj.*  
**waste** odpad *m. /grad*  
**water** voda *f. /žena*  
**way** put *m. /grad*  
**we** my *pron. personal*  
**weak** slabý *adj.*  
**weather** vrěme *n. /ime*  
**Welcome!** Dobro došli! *idiom*  
**what** čto, čto *pron. interrog.*  
**what kind of?** kaky? *pron. interrog.*  
**what order?** koliky? *num. interrog.*  
**what?** 1 koliky? *num. interrog.* 2 čto?  
*pron. interrog.*

**when?** kogda? *adv. interrog.*

**where? (a new desired position of something/somebody)** kamo? *adv. interrog.*

**where? (an existing position of something/somebody)** kde? *adv. interrog.*

**where? (on the way to a new desired position from an existing position)** kudu? *adv. interrog.*

**which?** 1 kaky? *pron. interrog.* 2 ktory?  
*pron. interrog.*

**white** běly *adj.*

**who?** kto? *pron. interrog.*

**why?** začto? *adv. interrog.*

**wife** žena *f. /žena*

**wine** vino *n. /sělo*

**winter** zimny *adj.*

**Winter** zima *f. /žena*

**with** s *prep. instr.*

**without** bez *prep. gen.*

**woman** žena *f. /žena*

**wood** 1 drevo *n. /sělo* 2 lěs *m. /grad*

**word** 1 slovo *n. /sělo* 2 slovo *n. /nebo*

**work** 1 dělati, dělaješ *v. ipf.* 2 rabotati,

rabotaješ *v. ipf.*

**world** 1 mir *m. /grad* 2 svět *m. /grad*

**worst** gorši *adj.*

**write** pisati, pišeš *v. ipf.*

**write down** napisati, napišeš *v. pf.*

## Y

**year** 1 god *m. /grad* 2 godina *f. /žena*

3 lěto *n. /sělo*

**yellow** žlutý *adj.*

**yes** 1 da *article* 2 ej *article*

**yesterday** 1 včera *adv.* 2 včerajší *adj.*

**yet** 1 ještě *adv.* 2 obače *article*

**you (pl. or politely)** vy *pron. personal*

**you (sg.)** ty *pron. personal*

**young** mladý *adj.*

**your (pl. or politely)** vaš *pron. poss.*

**your (sg.)** tvoj *pron. poss.*

## Z

**zero** nula *num.*

# Bibliography

ALEŠ, Pavel: *Biskup Gorazd, z díla.* 1. vyd. Brno, Ústřední církevní nakladatelství, 1988.

BAMBAS Václav F.: *Die Formbildung der Slawischen Sprache - Tvarosklad Jazyka Slovanského,* Praha 1861.

BARTOŇ, Josef: *Uvedení do klasické staroslověnštiny.* 1. dotisk vyd. Praha Karolinum, 2004. 70 s. ISBN 80-7184-980-4.

BLAGOVA E., CEJTLIN R.M., VEČERKA R.: *Старославянзкий Словарь*, Moskva 1994.

BOR, Matej et al.: *Veneti, First Builders of European Community*, Temeron Books, Inc. 1996, 533 pages, ISBN 978-0968123607.

DAVIS, Martin D., WEYUKER, Elaine J.: *Computability, Complexity and Languages (Fundamentals of Theoretical Computer Science)*. Academic Press Inc. New York, 1983. 425 pp. ISBN 0-12-206380-5.

DERKSEN Rick: *Etymological Dictionary of the Slavic Inherited Lexicon*, Boston, 2008.

HAUPTOVÁ, Zoe, VEČERKA, Radoslav: *Staroslovjanská čítanka.* 1. vyd. Praha, Karolinum, 2004. 189 s. ISBN 80-246-0478-7.

HARRIS, Robert: *Transition Words and Phrases.* [<http://www.virtualsalt.com/transits.htm>]

IZVESTI.info on-line news. [<http://izvesti.info>]

MERUNKA, Vojtěch: *The Neoslavonic Language Tutorial.* [<http://www.neoslavonic.org>]

MERUNKA, Vojtěch: *Novoslověnsky jazyk.* Nová Forma, 2009. 128 pages. ISBN 9788087313510 [[http://aleph.nkp.cz/F/?func=find-b&find\\_code=ISN&request=9788087313510](http://aleph.nkp.cz/F/?func=find-b&find_code=ISN&request=9788087313510)]

MINNS E., *St. Cyril Really Knew Hebrew*, Melanges Publies Paris, Institut D'Etudes Slaves, 1925.

MOJDL, Lubor: *Encyklopédie písem světa I., Písma Evropy, Kavkazu a helénské oblasti.* 1. vyd. Praha, LIBRI 2005. 183 s. ISBN 80-7277-288-0.

NAZOR Anica: *Knjiga o hrvatskoj glagoljici*, Zagreb 2005. Društvo prijatelja glagoljice.

QUILES, Carlos, LOPEZ-MENCHERO, Fernando. *A Grammar of Modern Indo-European. 2nd Edition.* Asociación Cultural Dngħu, Academia Byblos, Badajoz, 2009, 824 pp.  
<http://dnghu.org/en/Grammar-Indo-European-Language/> ISBN 1448682061

RADZIKOWSKI, Steeven: *Interslavic Lexicon.* [<http://dict.interslavic.com>]

ŠIMKEVIČ Fedor: *Корнесловъ русскаго языка сравнънаго со всъми главнѣйшиими славянскими наречіями*, Sankt-Peterburg 1842.

ŠTEC, Mikuláš: *Staroslovienčina a Církevná slovančina.* 1. vyd. Prešov, Prešovská univerzita, 1997. 249 s. ISBN 80-88885-20-5.

STEENBERGEN van, Jan: *The Interslavic Language.* [<http://steen.free.fr/interslavic>]

STEEENBERGEN van, Jan: *Towards a Unified Slavic Language: Past, Present and Future of the Interslavic Language(s)*. The Language Creation Society. The Fourth Language Creation Conference, 2011. [<http://conlang.org/language-creation-conference/lcc4/>]

ŠTÚR Ľudevít: *Nárečja Slovenskuo - potrěba písania v tomto nárečí*, Prešpork 1846.

TACHIAOS, Anthony-Emil N.: *Cyril and Methodius of Thessalonica: The Acculturation of the Slavs*, Crestwood, N.Y.: St. Vladimir's Seminary, 2001.

TACHIAOS, Anthony-Emil N.: *Κύριλλος και Μεθόδιος. Οι θεμελιωτές της αρχαίας σλαβικής γραμματείας*, Θεσσαλονίκη 1992.

University of Wisconsin - Madison. *Writer's Handbook* [<http://www.writing.wisc.edu/Handbook/index.html>]

VEČERKA Radoslav: *Jazyky v komparaci*, Euroslavica, ISBN 9788085494877.

VEČERKA, Radoslav: *Základy slovanské filologie a staroslověnštiny*. 1. vyd. Brno, Masarykova univerzita, 1991. 112 s. ISBN 80-210-1375-3.

VONDRAK, Václav, BARTOŇ, Josef: *Vocabulář klasické staroslověnštiny*. 1. vyd. Praha, Koniash Latin Press, 2005. 137 s. ISBN 80-85917-60-2.

ZERVA, Georgia: *Μη φοβάσαι τα ελληνικά - Μικρός οδηγός της νέας ελληνικής γλώσσας*, Prague, Athos Europeen, 1999. 118 s. ISBN 80-239-5066-5.

ZILJSKI Matija Majar: *Uzajemni pravopis slavjanski*, Praga 1863. (free accessible in Google Books)

# Interslavic projects

## internet news - IZVĚSTI.info

During its first year of operation, since October 2011, articles were opened 250.000 times by 14,000 unique Internet readers from 93 countries. Articles are written in various dialects of Interslavic. News is operated by the Interslavic Community at the web address <http://IZVESTI.info>.

ВСЕСЛОВЪНСКИ НОВИНИ VSESLOVENSKI NOVINY ПІДПОРІЖНІ ПІДПОРІЖНІ УПІОРЕНІ ВІСЕСЛОВЕНЕНКІ НОВИНЫ

# IZVIESTIJA.info

Novoslověnsky jezyk bude v filmu "Barvovana Ptica"

November 2012 3 subota

Informacija o článku. Publikovano: četvrtok, 25. Oktober 2012. Autor: AVM Kategórija: Kultura Izobraznenia: 120 Aktualizovano: petek, 26. Oktober 2012

Znajemey češsky producer, akter i režiser Václav Marhoul bude gotoviti film na osnově knigi "Barvovana Ptica" (orig. Painted Bird, barva = čvet, šara, boja) od američkega autora Jerzy Kosińskiego. Kniga opisuje težky život jevrejskega dětka, kterežo jeho roditeli sut ukryli na selo v vremeni 2-ej světové vojny.

Ljudi v tomto istoričnem filmu budut govoriti svojimi narodnimi jezykami. To znači, že naprimjer vojniki Wehrmacha budut govoriti nemęckim jezykom, vojniki Sovjetskej Armije budut govoriti russkim jezykom itd. No městni ljudi iz selu budut govoriti novoslověnski. Příčina koristění medžljezika jest v tom, že autor knihy ne napisal točnu lokalitu i narod svojih osob v knigë i film hoče tuto autorovu ideju respektiranija tajnosti točnej lokality i naroda d'ržati. Zatože film bude zvukovo mnogojezčny, bude jemu tréba imeti textove podtitulky p'rvoplano v engliškem, češskem, russkem i novoslověnskem jezykah.

Tutoj buduči film je dostal nominaciju do 12 najlučših scenarov sredno i vazhodnoeuropskih filmov v programë ScripTeast do filmovega festivala 2013 v Cannes.

Arhiv

December 2011  
November 2011  
Oktober 2011  
September 2011  
August 2011  
Jul 2011  
Jun 2011  
Januar 2011

QR code

MEDŽUSLOVÉNSKI NOVINY МЕДЖУСЛОВЕНСКИ НОВИНИ МЕДЖУСЛОВЈАНСКИ НОВИНИ MEDŽUSLOVJANSKI NOVINY INTERSLAVIC NEWS

# IZVĚSTI.info

GLAVNA STRANICA POLITIKA - EKONOMIJA KULTURA - RELIGIJA - HISTORIJA NAUKA - TEHNOLOGIJA SPORT VESELJJE RAZLIČNE

Iskanje ...

Naši partnerji:

NAJNOVĚJŠÍ ČLANKY

Naučny recenzirany časopis SLOVANSKÁ UNIE

Medžunarodny festival DNY SLOVENSKOJ KULTURY, 19. - 24. 2016

SLOVENSKA KULTURNA DIPLOMACIJA - SWOT analiza, strategija i takтика do budučnosti

Devata planeta (Deveta planeta)

Pozdráv s Nomoju Rocočinoju i Ročestvom Hristóym

V súzvězdí Laběděja našli něčto veľmi divné

Naučny članok do konferencie ICELAIC 2015

Gimn slovénov (nsl)

Na Mars bylo jezero s uslovjami dlja žitja

Rossija bude imati novi vsijmirni koraby

Kategorija: NAUKA - TEHNOLOGIJA Datum: Četvrtok, 29 September 2011 21:48 Čitanja: 2141

(Россия буде имати нови всијмирни кораби) Russka naučna i tehnička kompanija Energija je izvestila, že je dokončila analizu projekta novego vsijmirnega korabu imenem "Rus". Tuti koraby budut imati kapacitu za 6 ljudi, i jih kabina bude (podobno jako američki orbitalni samoljet) nieskoliko raza (pravdepodobno do 10 letov) letati iz Zemje do vsijmirnega prostora.

ponedeljek, 17. Oktober 2016

QR code

PARTNERI

SLOVÉNSKY SOVEZ http://slovane.org

medžunarodny portal slovenskih družstev slavic-union.org

MEDŽUSLOVENSKI NOVINY    MEDIJASLOVJEŠKI NOVINI    MEDIJASLOVJANSKI NOVINY    MEDŽUSLOVJANSKI NOVINY    INTERSLAVIC NEWS

**IZVESTI.info**    **IZVIESTIJA.info**

BG BIH BY CZ HR MK MNE PL RUS RY UA SK SLO SRB WEN

GLAVNA STRANICA    POLITIKA - EKONOMIJA    KULTURA - RELIGIJA - HISTORIJA    NAUKA - TEHNOLOGIJA    SPORT    VESELJIE    RAZLICNE

Iskanje ...  
što iskajete?

**NAJNOVËJSI ČLANKY**

Naučnyj recenzirany časopis SLOVANSKÁ UNIE  
Medžunarodnyj festival DNY SLOVENSKOJ KULTURY, 19. - 24. 5. 2016  
SLOVÉNSKA KULTURNA DIPLOMACIA - SWOT analiza, strategija i taktika do budućnosti  
Devata planeta (Deveta planeta)  
Pozdrav s Novom Rocihoju i Rocestvom  
V suzvëzdji Labeda našli něčto velmi dívno  
Naučnyj članok do konferencije ICELAIC 2015  
Gimn слов'нов (nsl)

**PIVO / PIVO**

Kategorija: NAUKA - TEHNOLOGIJA  
Datum: Šreda, 27 Jul 2011 21:16  
Čitanja: 5498

Pivo jest jedin iz najstarejših alkoholičkih napitkov pijemih v svim svietie. Ime, "Pivo" jest staroslovenske slovo, iže jest značilo najrazširenjejši i najobyačnij napitok.

Pivo jest jedin iz najstarejših alkoholičkih napitkov pijemih v svim svietie. Ime, "Pivo" jest staroslovenske slovo, iže jest značilo najrazširenjejši i najobyačnij napitok.



ponedeljek, 17. Oktober 2016



**PARTNERI**

**SLOVÉNSKY SOVEZ**  
<http://slovane.org>  
medžunarodny portal slovenskikh državstev

**SLAVIC UNION**

VSEČJUVJINSKI NOVINY VSESLOVJENSKI NOVINY VSEČJUVJINSKI NOVINY VSEČJUVJINSKI NOVINY VSEČJUVJINSKI NOVINY

**IZVIESTIJA.info**

Što iskajete?

Glavna stranica Politika Kultura Religija Nauka Tehnologija Istorija Sport Veselje Različne info Pisati članek Registracija



## Julija Timošenko pred sudom



Informacija o članek. Publikirano: subota, 25. Jun 2011.

Kategorija: Politika Izobrazjenja: 1806

Aktualizirano: ponедељек, 4. Jul 2011

Byvša prva ministra Ukrajiny, Julija Timošenko, je v petek stanula pred sudom v Kijevu. Ona je obvišena v tom, že v čase svojega premiestva je zloupotrebila vlast i prounevěrila državne penize, za čo grozi jej deset let uvezenja. Sama Timošenko nazýva toj proces «farsoju i cirkom».



Glavnoj težboju protiv 50-ljetnog Timošenko je to, že kontrakt o gazé, zaklučene s Rusijo v 2009, sur pričinil utraty dla ukrajinskog državnog skarba. Timošenko, jedna iz tých, ktorí sú počeli pomarančovou revoluciou v 2004, ostro kritikuje proces. Jejnym miňemjem je go nadohnul preident Viktor Janukovič aby otišti opoziciju. Jestli ona bude osuđena, ona – kako pokarana osoba – v sledujočim godine ne može kandidovati v izborah. Vlada odkida obvišenje, že proces ima političnu motivaciju.

Pred procesom Timošenko je povđela žurnalistam: «Nikto ne sumnjava odnosno togo, že sudy i prokuratura sut v privatnyh rukah, i že ne bude spravedlivosti». Odpovědajuč na pytania ona ne je vstala, a potom je izžedala uvolnění suditel, kogoje je nazvala «pionom na rukah prezidentskogo aparata» i obvinila, že je čest systema «političních represií, provádzaných od strany vlády».

Okolo týsce ludi je demonstrovalo pred budynkom suda, aby izraziti podpor dla

Arhiv
<a href="#">December 2011</a>
<a href="#">November 2011</a>
<a href="#">Oktober 2011</a>
<a href="#">September 2011</a>
<a href="#">August 2011</a>
<a href="#">Jul 2011</a>
<a href="#">Jun 2011</a>
<a href="#">Januar 2011</a>



## Martin Strel-fenomenalni plavec / Мартин Стрел-феноменалнији плавец



Informacija o članek. Publikirano: četvrttek, 13. Oktober 2011.

Autor: Jan Vít Kategorija: Sport Izobrazjenja: 1592

Aktualizirano: subota, 22. Oktober 2011

Martin Strel je žijuča legenda i fenomenalni maratoniski plavec rođen 1. Oktobra 1954 v gradie Mokronog (Slovenija). Martin Strel je žijuča legenda i fenomenalni maratoniski plavec rođen 1. Oktobra 1954 v gradie Mokronog (Slovenija).



Naš modernij svet ne imaje više ljudi vjerujučih v sudbinu. Ale ja imaju jedno važne pytanje. Ako-li jest niekto rodien v gradie Mokro-nog i prijme po svih predkach imeno Strel (ot streliti), što iz njego v budućim može byti? Ogovorenje za vših jest nad s'ince jasno. V osobie Martina imaje svet fenomenalnega plavca poražajućeg največi rek.

Nash modernij svet ne imaje više ljudi vjerujučih v sudbinu. Ale ja imaju jedno važne pytanje. Ako-li jest niekto rodien v gradie Mokro-nog i prijme po svih predkach imeno Strel (ot streliti), što iz njego v budućim može byti? Ogovorenje za vših jest nad s'ince jasno. V osobie Martina imaje svet fenomenalnega plavca poražajućeg največi rek.

Arhiv
<a href="#">December 2011</a>
<a href="#">November 2011</a>
<a href="#">Oktober 2011</a>
<a href="#">September 2011</a>
<a href="#">August 2011</a>
<a href="#">Jul 2011</a>
<a href="#">Jun 2011</a>
<a href="#">Januar 2011</a>



## **interslavic dictionary**

INTERSLAVIC or MEDŽUSLOVJANSKY is an auxiliary panskic language intended for regional communication among speakers and writers of the related SLAVIC languages (Belarusian, Bulgarian, Croatian, Czech, Macedonian, Polish, Russian, Serbian, Slovak, Slovenian, Ukrainian), which all derive from an original "PROTO-SLAVIC" tongue, but which, over years, have morphed into very divergent "dialects," each becoming a separate language. INTERSLAVIC is a collaborative effort of a group of Slavic language speakers to establish the first panskic language that is fully based on the commonalities of the living Slavic languages, augmented with key elements of traditional Old Church Slavonic word-forms. The biggest Interslavic dictionary is maintained by the author of Slovianski, Mr Jan van Steenbergen, who is also a vice-president of the Language Creation Society.

**[http://steen.free.fr/interslavic/dynamic\\_dictionary.html](http://steen.free.fr/interslavic/dynamic_dictionary.html)**

INTERSLAVIC is currently being tested by a consortium of law firms in four SLAVIC countries as a lingua franca for legal and financial agreements. If you have any questions or comments, please email them to Steven Radzikowski, San Diego.

**admin@interslavic.com**

Also, a Blog of interesting articles written in INTERSLAVIC may be found at  
**<http://IZVESTI.info>**

## **Facebook group**

Discussion group of about 1.200 members is at the address  
**<https://www.facebook.com/groups/interslavic>**

## **speech synthesizer - [generator.neoslavonic.org](http://generator.neoslavonic.org)**

On-line speech generator is accessible at the address  
**<http://generator.neoslavonic.org>**

## **false friends of the slavist**

This is a collection of shared words having different meanings between Slavonic languages made by Daniel Bunčić at the address:

**[http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/False\\_Friends\\_of\\_the\\_Slavist](http://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/False_Friends_of_the_Slavist)**

This project was started in October 1999, when Daniel Bunčić was writing his master thesis about false friends.

## **CISLa - Conference on Interslavic Language**

Since its inception, Interslavic has been much discussed in the press and on the Internet, both within its circle of currently ca. 2,000 users and interested bystanders and elsewhere. Extensive use in various contexts and feedback from all Slavic countries have made it clear that the primary purpose of Interslavic, to be understood by Slavs of any nationality without prior study, has been achieved. Until recently, however, this could be said only about written Interslavic, as experiences with spoken Interslavic were scarce and mostly limited to individual contacts.

On 1–2 June 2017 the first Conference on the Interslavic language (CISLa 2017) took place in the Czech town of Staré Město near Uherské Hradiště. There were 64 active participants from 12 different countries, including representatives of several organisations and institutions and experts in the fields of interlinguistics, Slavistics, pedagogy and history. Among the items discussed were: language problems in civil participation, e-democracy, knowledge transfer, and the potential role of zonal constructed languages in education, tourism, digital economy and the development of civil societies in a globalised world.

The conference was a milestone, because for the first time in history Interslavic was used during an official, public event. Most presentations and discussions were either held in Interslavic or translated consecutively into Interslavic, which turned out to be sufficient for all Slavic participants – including Poles and Bulgarians – to understand almost everything. A remarkable and rather unexpected side effect was also that a few participants who had never learned Interslavic, suddenly started speaking it during the conference. This shows how easily passive multilingualism, with the right tools, can be transformed into active multilingualism. The success of the conference also demonstrates clearly that the Interslavic language makes it possible to organise Slavic multinational activities, such as scientific conferences, cultural happenings, sports events and even beauty pageants with the help of a single interpreter.

## **SLOVJANI.info - professional journal**

SLOVJANI.info (in English: the SLAVS, web <http://SLOVJANI.info>) is an expert journal focusing on issues of Slavic peoples in the wider sociocultural context of current times. The journal supports the contribution of Slavic science and culture to the development of modern civilization. The journal SLOVJANI.info is an international successor of the journal SLOVANSKÁ UNIE from the years 2016–2017. Submitted articles for the journal are subjected to a profound review process by experts from the editorial board and must be written in Interslavic or any other Slavic language, Esperanto, English, German, Spanish, French, or Italian, but every article must at least have an abstract and keywords in the Interslavic and English languages. SLOVJANI.info would like to publish original contributions not only from professionals but also from PhD students and independent researchers or other people interested in Slavic issues. Copies of already published texts in other journals, books or proceedings are not accepted. The journal SLOVJANI.info allows the authors to hold the copyright without restrictions and retain publishing rights without restrictions.

The journal SLOVJANI.info is published by the Slavic Union in the Czech Republic (in Czech: *Slovanská unie*). Print version is made by Tribun EU Ltd., Cejl 892/32, Brno 602 00. The journal has two issues per year and is published in Prague. Distribution is organized by the Slavic Union, EACEA PIC 923 564 549, Czech company ID is 481 33 396, <http://slovane.org>. E-mail contact to the editorial board is: [redakcija@slovjani.info](mailto:redakcija@slovjani.info). Registration code of the Czech Ministry of Culture is MK CR E 22525. ISSN 2570-7108 (print), ISSN 2570-7116 (on-line).

The journal SLOVJANI.info is included in the CEEOL database (Central and Eastern European Online Library GmbH, Frankfurt am Main, Germany). The website of SLOVJANI.info is regularly archived by the National Library of the Czech Republic for its cultural, educational, scientific, research or other values with the aim of documenting an authentic sample of the Czech web. It belongs to a collection of Czech websites to be preserved by the National Library and made available for posterity. Its record is included in the Czech National Bibliography and the National Library catalogue.

SLOVJANI.info is a journal with an independent review process - the double-blind peer review. The journal publishes only such texts that meet both content and formal requirements set by the editorial board. Reviewers are various international experts especially in humanities, social sciences, archaeology, linguistics, or culture and art. Each text is reviewed by two independent reviewers from the editorial board who are not from the author's workplace or in conflict with the text. If opinions of two reviewers are different, the editorial board asks the third reviewer to conclude the review result. Editorial informs authors about the conclusion, which respects one of the following:

1. The text will be published without the need for modification.
2. The text will be published after accomplishing the reviewer's questions and recommendations.
3. The text will not be published. The text can be a subject to a new review process only after fundamental redesign. New version of text must meet the same rules as the first version: It must adhere to the specified template and page range, bibliographic standards, etc.

The cultural, scientific, and educational activity that is the goal of this journal does not have the same formal and strictly logical verification mechanism that we see in natural and technical sciences. The degree of understanding of our activity is a social process that is bound to specific cultural, social, and economic conditions. This knowledge is dependent on the conditions of its origin and is related to the value framework from which it originates and therefore has a relativistic-constructivist character. That is why the journal has to respect the criterion of the correctness and rationality of all statements: The relationship to the improvement of the quality of life of people and keep the principle of equality of nationality, religion and gender, as well as the high rejection of xenophobic teachings. The modern international Slavic movement is not a confrontation between the Slavs and other peoples. There is no superiority of some Slavic nations, cultures, and languages over other nations, cultures, and languages. Our strategic goal is to use our Slavic, European and Christian strengths to create new opportunities to strengthen peace cooperation around the modern world.

## **modern Slavic nations**

### **moderne slovjanske narody**

Slovjani sut jedna iz najsilnějših větev indoevropských narodov.

Slovjani žijut v južnoj, srědnoj i vzhodnoj oblasti Evropy i v Aziji.  
Na evropskom severu i zapadu ne žijut.

Vkupě na Zemji žije trista milionov slovjanských dušej.

Vsi Slovjani imějut svoje državy, toliko sami Lužicsci Srbi  
svoju državu ne imajut i padajut pod Germaniju.  
Ruska država Rossia jest najbolša država světa.

Južne slovjanske narody sut Slovenci (Ilyrski Slovjani), Hrvati,  
Ilyrski Srbi, Bosnjaci, Černogorci, Slavomakedonci i Bulgari.

Zapadne slovjanske narody sut Čehi, Slovaki (Karpatski Slovjani),  
Poljaci i Lužičksi Srbi.

Vzhodne slovjanske narody sut Rusi, Ukrajinci, Bělorusi i Rusyni.

## **our village**

### **Naše sělo (from the book by Mary Russel Mitford, Our Village, 1824)**

Iz vsih možnyh idealnyh měst, v ktorih žijut ljudi, najbolše ljubju malo sělo, daleko od šumnogo grada, s jego maloju občinoju. Ono ne imaje přepolnjene bloky, ale samo male drvene budniky. Jest to prosto i slično město do života, s žiteljami, ktoryh lica sut rovno znajeme kako cvěty v našem sadu. To jest zatvorjeny svět s nemnogo ljudimi, blizko ujednjenyimi kako mravky v mravkovoj kupě, pčely v pčelniku, ovce v ovčej štalě, monahi v monastiru ili morjaki na korabu, kde vsej znaje vsego i vse jest znano od vsego, kde vsej se interesuje v vsim i vsej može imeti naděju, že někto se v njem interesuje.

Kako drago by bylo zanoriti se v to srdečno čuvstvo ljubenja i neznamyh potřeb, dvignuti se i byti kolegami s těmi vsimi jedinstvenymi ljudimi okolo nas! Tako, že my budemo znati i ljubiti vse zakuty i povraty tonkyh ulic i solncem pokryte poljany, črež ktore budemo hoditi vsej den od jutra do večera. Mala socialna grupa, iže jest selska občina, jest to, čemu poezija i proza blagodari najbolše. Ide tamо uzka droga, iže v lepom teplom dni přehodi veliku široku drogu polnu aut i tirov. Ne hočeš li putovati s mnoju, dragy čitatelji? Put ne bude dolga. My budemo putovati od počatku doliny i otam idemo nagoru.

note:

In Interslavic, we use the Cyrillic character "ј" (*iota*) which is identical to the Latin "j". This character better evokes the original Greek-based character *iota* in the Old Church Slavonic. This kind of detailed vowel jotization in the Old Church Slavonic style has been introduced by the Serbian reformer Vuk Stefanović Karadžić by reason to distinct between jotized and non-jotized slavic vowels in South-Slavic languages.

## **modern Slavic nations - in Cyrillic**

### **модерне словянске народы**

Словяни сут једна из найсилнејших ветев индоевропских народов.

Словяни жију в южној, средној и взходној области Европы и в Азији.  
На европском северу и западу не жију.

Вкупе на Земји жије триста милионов словянских душај.

Вси Словяни имају своје државы, толико сами Лужичски Срби

своју државу не имају и падају под Германију.

Русска држава Россия јест најболша држава света.

Южне словянске народы сут Словенци (Илырски Словяни), Хървати,  
Илырски Срби, Босњаки, Черногорци, Славомакедонци и Булгари.

Западне словянске народы сут Чехи, Словаки (Карпатски Словяни),  
Поляки и Лужичски Срби.

Взходне словянске народы сут Руси, Украјинци, Белоруси и Русини.

## **our village - in Cyrillic**

### **наше село (from the book by Mary Russel Mitford, Our Village, 1824)**

Из всіх можних идеалных мест, в кторих жију люді, најболше люблю мало село, далеко от шумного града, с њего малою обчиною. Оно не имає преполнене блоки, само мале дрвене будники. Јест то просто и слично место до живота, с жителями, кторых лица сут ровно знајеме како цветы в нашем саду. То јест затворены свет с немного людими, близко уједњенными како мравки в мравковой купе, пчелы в пчелнику, овце в овчей штале, монахи в монастиру или моряки на корабу, кде всеј знає всего и все јест знано от всего, кде всей се интересује в всим и всей може имети надею, же некто се в ньем интересује.

Како драго бы было занорити се в то срдечно чувство любенија и незнамых потреб, двигнути се и быти колегами с теми всими јединствеными людими около нас! Тако, же мы будемо знати и любити вси закуты и повраты тонких улиц и солнцем покрыте поляны, чрез кторе будемо ходити всей ден от ютра до вечера. Мала социална група, иже јест селска обчина, јест то, чему поезија и проза благодари најболше. Иде тамо узка дрога, иже в лепом теплом дни преходи велику широку дрогу полну аут и тиров. Не хочеш ли путовати с мною, драгы читатели? Пут не буде долга. Мы будемо путовати од початку долины и одтамо идемо нагору.

## information flier for hotel guests

This Interslavic text has been made in 2012 for our Neoslavonic project in the hotel OASIS DEAD SEE for hotel guests coming from the Slavic countries. This project was organized with the kind assistance of Ms. Viktorija Ajziković from the hotel management and Mr. Andrej Teterov from Be'er Sheva.

Dear Guests!

Check in time after 15:00  
Check out time is by 11:00

The Restaurant Marine  
Breakfast: 07:00-10:30  
Supper: 18:00-20:30

The lobby bar is open daily from 11:00 until 22:30. Lobby bar offers light snacks meals all day with live entertainment in the evening.

The hotel's SPA hours are from 08:00 -18:00.  
It includes the Dead Sea water pool,  
Jacuzzi, Sauna, Turkish hamam (bath)  
and fitness room.

We also recommend that you book your SPA appointments well in advance in the SPA reception, or dial directly from your room 8040.

The Fitness room hours are  
08:00 -12:00 and 13:00 – 18:00

Free entrance in the external swimming pool hours are 08:00-18:00.

In addition, our hotel has a private beach, which located across the road from the right side of Ambulance through the big green gate.

The beach hours are 07:30- 18:00  
Hotel transport to the beach goes each 15 minutes from the central entrance.

You can get the towels for the pool, SPA and beach in the spa until 18:00. After 18:00, towels are available in the main reception.

Our hotel has a paid wi-fi, to purchase internet access. Please contact to the reception.

The hotel staff makes every effort to ensure to our guests a first-class vacation and full treatment at the Dead Sea.

Sincerely, the hotel management

Dragi gosti !

Do hotela se možete priglasiti od 15:00  
Iz hotela jest treba se odglasiti do 11:00

Vreme otvorjenja restauranta Marine  
jutrenica: 07:00 – 10:30  
večerja: 18:00 - 20:30

Lobby-Bar jest otvoren vsekakdy den od 11:00 do 22:30. Lobby-Bar Vam vsej den predlagaje male jedenja. Večerom Vas priglašajemo na veseljenje s živoju muzikoju.

Hotelova SPA jest otvorjena od 08:00 do 18:00. Uslugi SPA sodržajut bazen s vodoju iz Mrtvoga Mora, jacuzzi, saunu, turečske kupanje i fitness komnatu.

Sovjetujemo Vam, da boste usluge sobe najskoro rezervirali v recepciji SPA ili po telefonu iz vaše komnaty na čislu 8040.

Fitness jest otvoren od 8:00 do 12:00  
i potom od 13:00 do 18:00.

Bezplatny vstup na odkryty hotelovy bazen jest od 8:00 do 18:00.

Hotel takože imaje svoju privatnu plažu. Plaž jest na drugoj straně ulice desno (napravo) od Ambulancije. Vstop na plažu jest črež velike zelene vrata.

Hotelova plaž jest otvorena od 7:30 do 18:00.  
Na plaž ide hotelovy transport vsekakih 15 minut od centralnogog vkhoda.

Ručniky do SPA , bazena ili na plažu dostanete v SPA do 18:00. Po 18:00 dostanete ručniky na glavnoj recepciji.

Hotel takože imaje platjeno WiFi pripojenje na Internet. Prosimo kontaktujte recepciju.

Personal našego hotela prilagaje vse svoje usilje za Vaš prvoklasny oddyh i polno lečenje u Mrtvog Mora.

S uvaženjem, personal hotela

## ecclesiastical texts

These Interslavic texts are very close to the (Old) Church Slavonic originals. There are almost the same words (nouns, verbs, adjectives, ...) in both languages, the only difference is in orthography and grammar. The final effect of using Interslavic is the preservation of the original historical meaning and precision (semantics) combined with better understanding by virtue of comprehensible grammar and orthography (language syntax).

### Our Father

ОТҮЕ НАШ,

ИЖЕ ІЕСН НА НЕБЕСАХ,  
ДА СВЕТН СЕ НМЕ ТВОІЕ,  
ДА ПРИНДЕ ЦѢСАРСТВО ТВОІЕ,  
ДА БУГДЕ ВОЛЬА ТВОІА КАКО НА НЕБЕСН,  
И НА ЗЕМЛЫН.

ХЛѢБ НАШ НАСУГУНЫ ДАЙ НАМ ДНЕС,  
И ВДСТАВИ НАМ ДЛУГГЫ НАШЕ,  
КАКО И МЫ ВДСТАВИЕМО  
ДЛУЖНИКУМ НАШИМ.

И НЕ ВОВЕДИ НАС В НАПАСТ,  
АЛЕ ИЗБАВИ НАС ВД ЛУКАВОГО.

КАКО ТВОІЕ ІЕСТ ЦѢСАРСТВО  
И СИЛА И СЛАВА В ВѢКЫ.

Амен.

Otče naš,

iže jesi na nebesah,  
da sveti se ime Tvoje,  
da priide cesarstvo Tvoje,  
da bude volja Tvoja kako na nebesi,  
i na zemlji.

Hlěb naš nasučny daj nam dnes,  
i odstavi nam dlugy naše,  
kako i my odstavujemo  
dlužnikom našim.

I ne vovedi nas v napast,  
ale izbavi nas od lukavogo.  
Kako Tvoje jest cesarstvo  
i sila i slava v věky.

Amen.

Note that the old-Cyrillic letter omega "w" designates according to the Old Slavonic and Greek tradition the ordinary sound "o" [ɔ] in plural or genitive endings and prepositions.

### blagoslovjen Bog naš - blessed is our God

Slava Tobě, Bože naš, slava Tobě.

Slava Otcu i Synu i Svetomu Duhu, kako běše na počatku, i nyně, i vsegda na věky věkov.  
Amen.

### molitvy pokajanja - prayers of repentance

Bože, pomiluj mne grěšnogo.

Gospodi Isuse Hriste, Syne Božji, pomiluj mne grěšnogo.

Presveta Trojice, pomiluj nas, Gospodi očisti grěhy naše;  
Vladyko, prosti bezzakonstva naše;

Svety, posěti i izcěli nemoči naše, v imeni Tvojem.

Gospodi, pomni mne v cesarstvu Tvojem.

Gospodi pomiluj.

### molitva k Bogorodici - prayer to the Virgin Mary

Raduj se, Marije, blagodati polna! Gospod s Teboju;

blagoslovjena jesi medžu ženami, i blagoslovjen plod života tvojego Isus.

Sveta Marije, Mati Božja, moli se za nas grěšnyh, nyně i v vrěmeni smrti našeji.

Amen.

### **apostolsky symbol věry - apostles' creed**

Věruju v Boga, Otca Vsemogučego; Tvorca neba i zemlje.

I v Isusa Hrista, jedinого jegova Syna, Gospoda našego; iže běše počaty od Duha Svetoga,

rodženy od Marije Děvy; stradaše pri Pontu Pilatu, razpět jest, umrěše, i pogrěbjen;

sošel v Ad; v tretji den vzkrěšen iz mrtvyh; vozšel na nebesa;

sedi napravo od Boga Otca Vsemogučego; odtuda priide suditi žive i mrtve.

Věruju v Duha Svetoga; Svetu Vselensku Crkvu, občinu svetyh; odstavjenje grěhov;

vzkrešenje těla i život věčny.

Amen.

### **osnovne pravdy věry - basic truth of faith**

Bog jest jedin.

Neoddělimy Bog v trěh božskych licah jest: Otec, Syn i Duh Svety.

Bog jest najvyše spravedlivy.

Bog Syn se vočlověčil, da by nas smrtju svojeju na križi izkupil i v věky spasil.

Duša člověka bezsmrtna jest.

Do spašenja Blagodati Božej trěba jest.

*This Prayer (Greek: Εύχὴ τοῦ Ὁσίου Ἐφραίμ), is a prayer attributed to Saint Ephrem the Syrian and used during the Great Lent by the Eastern Orthodox Church and those Eastern Catholic Churches that use the Byzantine rite. In the Eastern tradition, this prayer is considered to be the most succinct summation of the spirit of Great Lent and is hence the Lenten prayer par excellence, prayed during all Lenten weekday services, such as the Liturgy of the Presanctified Gifts, and many more times in private. There are historically two versions of the prayer - the Greek and the Church Slavonic.*

O Lord and Master of my life,

give me not the spirit of sloth, despair, lust for power and idle talk.

But grant unto me, Thy servant, a spirit of integrity, humility, patience and love.

Yea, O Lord and King, grant me to see mine own faults and not to judge my brother.

For blessed art Thou unto the ages of ages. Amen.

**Gospodi i Vladýko života mojego,**

**duha unynja, nebreženja, srěbraljubjenja i prazdnoslovjenja odženi od mne.**

**Duha cělomudrovanja, smirjenja, trpěnja i ljuby daruj mi, rabu tvojemu.**

**Ej Gospodi Cěsarju, daj mi zrěti moje sogrěšenja, že ne osuždaju brata svojego.**

**Kako blagoslovjen jesi v věky. Amen.**

*The Kiev Missal is a Glagolitic Old Church Slavonic canon manuscript containing parts of the Roman-rite liturgy. It is usually held to be the oldest Old Church Slavonic manuscript with coherent text, dated at the latter half of the 10th century. This prayer is a plea for preservation of the Slavic state from enemies:*

**ѹкѹтѹкѹмѧ Ѥтѡ ѹкѹмѹмѧ ѡмѹмѹмѧ ѡмѹмѹмѧ ѹкѹмѹмѧ,**  
**& Ѥтѡ ѹкѹмѹмѧ Ѥтѡ ѹкѹмѹмѧ ѹкѹмѹмѧ,**  
**& Ѥтѡ ѹкѹмѹмѧ Ѥтѡ ѹкѹмѹмѧ ѹкѹмѹмѧ.**

**Cěsarstvo naše Gospodi milostju tvojeju prizri,**

**i ne oddaj našego tuzym,**

**i ne obrati nas v plěn narodom poganskym.**

## optional alphabets

Latin	ASCII	Cyrillic	Greek	Hebrew Yiddish	Arabic Farsi	IPA
a	a	ା	ଅ	א	ا	[ a ]
b	b	ବ	ମ୍ପ	ב	ب	[ b ]
c	c	ଚ	ଟ୍ସ	ଚ	(تସ)	[ ts ]
č	cz	ଚ	ଟ୍ୟୁ	ଶ	(تش)	[ tʃ ]
d	d	ଦ	ଡ	ଦ	د	[ d ]
dj	dj	ଦ୍ୟ	ଡ୍ୟୁ	ଦ୍ୟ	(دي)	[ ɟ ]
dž	dzs	ଦ୍ଜ	ଡ୍ୟୁସ	ଶ୍ଵର	ج	[ dʒ ]
e	e	ଏ	ଏ	୭	ه	[ ε ]
ě	e (ie)	ଏ (ବ୍ଲେଟ୍)	ଏ (ଇୱେଲ୍)	୭ (୨ୟ)	ه	[ ɛ ]
f	f	ଫ	ଫ	ଫ	ف	[ f ]
g	g	ଗ	ଗ	ଗ	(غ) گ	[ g ]
h	h	ଖ	ଖ	ହ (ହ)	ح	[ x ]
i	i	ି	ି	ି	ي	[ i ]
j (jer)	j	ବ୍ୟ	ବ୍ୟ	ି	ي	[ j ]
j	j	ଜ	ବ୍ୟ	ି	ي	[ j ]
ju	ju	ଯୁ	ଯୁ	ି	يُو	[ ju ]
k	k	କ	କ	କ	ك	[ k ]
l	l	ଲ	ଲ	ଲ	ل	[ l ]
lj	lj	ଲ୍ୟ	ଲ୍ୟ	ଲ୍ୟ	(لی) ل	[ ɻ ]
m	m	ମ	ମ	ମ	م	[ m ]
n	n	ନ	ନ	ନ	ن	[ n ]
nj	nj	ନ୍ୟ	ନ୍ୟ	ନ୍ୟ	(نی) ن	[ ɳ ]
o	o	ଓ (ଓ)	ଓ (ଓ)	ଓ	و	[ ɔ ]
p	p	ପ	ପ	ଫ	پ	[ p ]
q	q	କ	କ	କ	ق	[ k ]
r	r	ର	ର	ର	ر	[ r ]
s	s	ସ	ସ	ସ	س	[ s ]
š	sz	ଶ	ଶ	ଶ	ش	[ ʃ ]
šč	szcz	ଶ୍ଚ	ଶ୍ଚ	ଶ୍ଚ	(شش)	[ ſtʃ ]
t	t	ତ	ତ	ତ	ت	[ t ]
th	th	ଥ	ଥ	ଥ	ث	[ θ ]
tj	tj	ତ୍ୟ	ତ୍ୟ	ତ୍ୟ	(تی) ت	[ c ]
u	u	ୟ	ୟ	ୟ	و	[ ɔ ]
v	v	ବ	ବ	ବ	و	[ v ]
w	w	ବ	ବ	ବ	وو	[ v ]
x	x	କ୍ସ (କ୍ସି)	କ୍ସ	କ	کس	[ ks ]
y	y	ଯ	ଯ	ୟ	ي	[ i ]
z	z	ଢ	ଢ	ଢ	ز	[ z ]
ž	zs	ଝ	ଝ	ଝ	ڙ	[ ڙ ]

Greek orthography is based on the fact that Greeks do not have a standardized way of writing Slavic words and names, although they are in the long historical contact with the Slavs. This transcription of Slavic sounds is based on the both medieval and modern Greek alphabet usage by the Slavic-speaking minority population in the northern Greece.

Hebrew transcription of Interslavic is based on the Yiddish language and the Ladino language. Yiddish is a mixture of a German-like and Slavic-like language with about three million Jewish speakers from the Central and Eastern Europe, mainly Ashkenazy Jews, in the USA, Israel, Russia, Ukraine and other countries. Ladino was a kind of Spanish dialect written in Hebrew characters and is still spoken by decreasing minority of Judeo-Spanish people. This Hebrew transcription has been completely designed by the Czech linguist and alphabet expert Mr. Lubor Mojdl.

And finally, Arabic transcription of Interslavic is based on the Bosnian script Arebica of the Ottoman Empire, with added Slavic letters (both consonants and vowels) to the Turkish version of the Arabic and Persian (Farsi) alphabet. These added full letters are making Arebica a true alphabet, unlike its Farsi-Arabic base, which does not support all vowels. Arebica was used mainly between the 15<sup>th</sup> and 19<sup>th</sup> centuries. There are some efforts by Muslims to officially adopt Arebica as the third alphabet for Bosnian language alongside Latin and Cyrillic. This transcription has been designed with kind help of the Bosnian linguist and calligrapher Mr. Bojan Antić.

It is obvious that these exotic options are primarily aimed for users of these alphabets and serves them as an aid to the writing of the Slavic words and Slavic names in these different writing systems.

## ancient alphabets - Venetic/Etruscan, Glagolitic and old-Cyrillic

This chapter is written by Lubor Mojdl  
author of the book *Encyclopedia of the Alphabets in the World* (Mojdl, 2005)

Runic alphabet is popular especially among young people interesting in history, fantasy, etc. But Slavic languages are difficult to be well written in runes. The Venetic script probably served as a main source for the Germanic runes that appeared first in the Styrian region. Nevertheless, the Venetic script contains almost all letters necessary for its use in modern Slavic languages. As for the ancient script presented in this book, only few Etruscan letters were added to the original Venetic alphabet in order to express all the sounds of modern Slavic.

Venetic language was spoken in northeast Italy (Veneto) and part of contemporary Slovenia by the Veneti, a people famous in the Greek world for their excellent horses. They appear to have arrived to the region by the end of the second millenia B.C. The main centers of the Venetic culture were the towns of Padua, Venetic capital, and Este. The Venetic language is known by about 300 short inscriptions, either of the votive or the funeral character, dated from 6<sup>th</sup> century B.C. to the 1<sup>st</sup> century A.C.

Venetic was the centum Indo-European language and the inscriptions were written in the Venetic script, similar to the Etruscan alphabet, both derived from the Euboian Greek script. Venetic may have been related either to the Italic or the Illyrian languages but some scholars speak rather about independent Venetic group, probably related to Illyrian, Ligurian and Celtic.

Most probably the Adriatic Veneti, the Veneti of Gaul (northwest France) and the North Balkan Enetoi mentioned by Herodotus and Appian were not related to each other, nor to the Veneti or Venedi mentioned by Tacitus, Plinius and Ptolemaios and placed to the Baltic coasts.

Recently some Slovenian scholars (Bor, 1996) proposed a theory according to which the Veneti were Proto-Slavs and bearers of the Lusatian culture along the Amber Path who conquered and settled the region between the Baltic Sea and Adriatic Sea, as presented in their book *Veneti - First Builders of European Community*. This theory has been criticised and rejected by Slovenian and other European scholars, but mainly among Slovenian amateurs at linguistics the opinion that Adriatic Veneti were the ancestors of Slovenes is still alive. In fact, certain mixed "illyro-slavinity" cannot be definitely excluded.

a	b	c	č	d	đ	e	ě	f	g	h	i	ju	j	k	l	lj	m
Λ	Φ	↑	Γ	Χ	॥Χ	⊗Χ	Ἄ	Ἄ	Ὑ	Ὕ	Ἴ	Ἀ	॥	Ἴ	Ἄ	Ὕ	Ἄ
n	nj	o	p	q	r	s	š	št	t	tj	u	v	w	x	y	z	ž
Ϻ	ϻ	ϻ	ϻ	ϻ	ϻ	ϻ	ϻ	ϻ	ϻ	ϻ	ϻ	ϻ	ϻ	ϻ	ϻ	ϻ	ϻ

from right to left written script made from Venetic and Etruscan by Lubor Mojdl and author

Two Slavic scripts at the same time, Glagolitic and Cyrillic, are still an interesting enigma. Which of those two scripts was the first one? The official opinion says that st. Constantine the Philosopher (Cyril) first invented Glagolitic and his followers later made Cyrillic based mainly on the Greek and the Hebrew letters. In fact, the oldest preserved Slavic literature was actually written in Glagolitic. But some scholars oppose this theory; e.g. the famous British linguist Sir Ellis Howell Minns (1874-1953) was of the opinion that both alphabets were made by the same mind and that

*Cyril first made Cyrillic, using the natural basis of uncial Greek ... intending his creation for the benefit of Slavs about Salonica. Afterwards when sent on a mission into a land (Great Moravia), where Greek influence was struggling with Latin, he transformed the Greek letters to make them less suspect in Latin eyes. (Minns, 1925)*

a	b	c	č	d	đ	e	ě	f	g	h	i	ju	j	k	l	lj	m
ѧ	Ծ	Կ	Դ	Ճ	Ճ	Ե	Ւ	Փ	Ր	Խ	Հ	Յ	Ի	Կ	Լ	Լ	Մ
n	nj	o	p	q	r	s	š	št	t	tj	u	v	w	x	y	z	ž
Ն	Ն	Յ	Օ	Ո	Կ	Ռ	Ը	Շ	Վ	Տ	Ե	Վ	Վ	ԿԸ	Յ	Զ	Ժ

Cyrillic alphabet (design of Rumjan Lazov)

Glagolitic and Cyrillic share the same system of orthography, order of letters, etc. The only significant difference between these two scripts is visual shape of letters. Actually, some Glagolitic letters cannot be reasonably explained not otherwise but by transformation from Cyrillic originals.

This question remains open. However, some Glagolitic letters may have the origin in some even more exotic scripts like old Bulgarian (Turkic), Syrian etc., but the main part of letters was taken from Greek, Hebrew, Latin maybe also from proto-Cyrillic and from Byzantium astrological symbols. The appearance of Glagolitic letters was changed by rotation, turning over and decoration, in order to camouflage their actual origin. This possible theory may also explain why Glagolitic alphabet in all orthodox countries was

quickly replaced by the Cyrillic alphabet, which is much easier to read because it is very close to the Greek script. Glagolitic remained in use only in the catholic-oriented Croatia (and also at the turn of the 14<sup>th</sup> and 15<sup>th</sup> century in Prague). Glagolitic survived in Croatia until the early 20<sup>th</sup> century and now is still alive as a popular tourist attraction. (Nazor, 2005) This is the reason why we deal with Glagolitic in this book and propose Interslavic writing in this ancient Slavic alphabet.

a	b	c	č	d	đ	dž	e	ě	f	g	h	i	ju	j	k	l	lj	m
†	‡	¶	¤	¤	¤	¤	¤	¤	¤	¤	¤	¤	¤	¤	¤	¤	¤	¤
n	nj	o	p	q	r	s	š	št	t	tj	u	v	w	x	y	z	ž	'
¶	¶	¶	¶	¶	¶	¶	¶	¶	¶	¶	¶	¶	¶	¶	¶	¶	¶	¶

Glagolitic alphabet made from angular Croatian version by Filip Cvitić

## interslavic Braille

This chapter is written by Roberto Lombino

Braille is a tactile writing system used by the blind and the visually impaired, and found in books, on menus, signs, elevator buttons, and currency, etc. Braille characters are small rectangular blocks called cells that contain tiny palpable bumps called raised dots. The number and arrangement of these dots distinguish one character from another.

Unfortunately, there are more mutually different Braille alphabets used for the Slavic languages. This Interslavic Braille proposal described below is based mostly on the Czech and Yugoslav Braille alphabets. It contains letters for all sounds of Interslavic and does not have different codes for Latin, Cyrillic and Greek letters of the same sound.

a a	f φ	m m	s c	x ž
b b	g r	n n	š š	y y v
c č	h ch x	ň nj ny	t t	z z
č č	i i	o o w	t' tj t'v	ž ž
d d	j j y	p p	th e	ps ψ
d' đ đ y	k k	q q	u y	j y
e e	l l	r p	v v	' b'
ě ie ţ	ř ř j l y	ř ř j p y	w w	

Interslavic Braille designed by Roberto Lombino

## **grammar tables**

# MEDŽUSLOVJANSKY JĘZYK

## Zaimeniky

August 2018

## žena duša ženske tvrdi i měkký vzor

	žen-a	duš-a	množina	dvojčina
N	žen-a	duš-a	žen-y	duš-e
A	žen- <b>u</b>	duš- <b>u</b>	žen-y	duš-e
G	žen-y	duš-e	žen-	duš-e
L	žen-é	duš-í	žen-áh	duš-ú
D	žen-é	duš-í	žen-am	duš-am
-	žen-oju	duš-eju	žen-amí	duš-amí
V	žen-o	duš-o-(e)	žen-y	duš-e!

V latinici i cirilici jest možno vrnati písmati prosto **i**

i vrnati **é** písmati prosto **e**. Napr. **tyba**→**ribka**

**k**→**č**, **h**→**š**, **g**→**ž**, **ci**→**č**, **si**→**š**, **zj**→**ž**

**Grék**→**grétský prah**→**prášny Bog**→**božský prosíj**→**prošú**

Napr.: **žen-a** je jedinica; **duš-a** je množina

Palatizacija i eufonija: **k**→**č**, **h**→**š**, **g**→**ž**, **ci**→**č**, **si**→**š**, **zj**→**ž**.

**Grék**→**grétský prah**→**prášny Bog**→**božský prosíj**→**prošú**

1. Staroslovjansko jati **t=b=e** se može pisati bez diakritiky kako **ie** ili prosto **e**.

Podobno **č, š, ž** se mogut pisati kako **cz, sz, zs**.

2. Staroslovjansko **u** jest na počatkah slov kako **šč**, ale potom kako **č**.

(napr. **čít, pomóč, občina, svéča**)

3. V cirilici možno koristiti ligaturu **шч**→**ш**

Međuslovjanski jezik drži morfološko pravopisanje **шч**→**ш**

Koren slova se piše rovno u svih padežih. Anglijske, latinske i grčeske slova imaju svoje originalne pravopisanje ale bez anglosilona i s fonetičnym **s/z** i s međuslovjanskym zakončenjima (**architektura, biologija, sistem, fizika, diskuzija, baza, vaza, ...**).

## imeniky

	grad	brat-i	množina	dvojčina
N	brat	brat-i	grad-a	brat-a
A	brat-a	brat-i	grad-a	brat-a
G	brat-a	brat-i	grad-ov	brat-ov
L	brat-u	brat-u	grad-u	brat-u
D	brat-u	brat-u	grad-am	brat-am
-	brat-om	brat-om	grad-ami	brat-ami
V	brat-e!	brat-e!	grad-y	brat-a!

## BRAT (živ.) GRAD (neživ.)

## ženina

## množina

## dvojčina

## mujžšky tvrdi vzor

	muž	nož	množina	jeedinica
N	muž	muž-i	nož-e	muž-i
A	muž-a	nož	muž-ev	nož-a
G	muž-a	nož-a	muž-ev	nož-u
L	muž-u	nož-u	muž-ah	nož-u
D	muž-u	nož-u	muž-am	nož-am
-	muž-em	nož-em	muž-ami	nož-ama
V	muž-u	nož-u	muž-i	nož-a!

## MUŽ (živ.) NOŽ (neživ.)

## ženina

## množina

## dvojčina

## mujžšky měkký vzor

## mužske objekty, ktoré aktívno dělajú někáž proces, súž životné

(od pytanja KTO?) i po tutoj pričine imajú akuzativ rovny s genitivom.

Ostatne objekty súž **neživotne** (od pytanja ČTO) i imajú v jedinine akuzativ rovny s nominativom.

napr.: **gospod peče hleb.** (**hleb** ne može pekti = jest neživotny)

**gospod vidí človeka.** (**človek** može videti = jest životny)

Slova mujžskeho roda zakončení na **a** imajú v jedinine klonjenie po tvrdom vzoru **žena** ili měkkom vzoru **duša**, ale v množině i dvojčine imajú normalny měkký vzor.

napr.: **vladyk-a**, **vladyk-k-e**, **vladyk-k-u**, **vladyk-k-o**, ... (žednina)

**vladyk-i**, **vladyk-k-o**, **vladyk-k-am**, **vladyk-k-amí**, ... (množina)

**krat-e**→**ši**→**tvrdší**

**krat-e**→**ši**→**tvrdší**

**bogat-e**→**ši**→**bogat-ši**





Vojtěch Merunka is born in 1967 in Čáslav, Central Bohemia, where he spent his early life and graduated from high school. Initially a master in computer engineering from the Czech Technical University in Prague, he became a PhD in data processing and mathematical modeling and an associate professor of information management at the Czech University of Life Sciences, Faculty of Economics and Management and the Czech Technical University in Prague, Faculty of Nuclear Sciences and Physical Engineering. Vojtěch is professionally interested in object-based programming languages and object-oriented methods and tools for modeling and simulation and has among other activities long been concerned in conlanging. He is a chairman of the Slavic Union in the Czech Republic. (<http://slovane.org>) and together with Jan van Steenbergen an editor-in-chief of the first interslavic professional journal SLOVJANI.info (<http://slovjani.info>).

This book is a result of his practical experience in the international collaborative project Interslavic (<http://www.facebook.com/groups/interslavic>).